

ENGLISH SELF-STUDY SERIES

英文自修叢書

STORIES FROM
THE ARABIAN NIGHTS

(WITH CHINESE NOTES)

天方夜譚

(附漢文釋義)

BY

TSEU YIH ZAN

周越然註釋

THE COMMERCIAL PRESS, LIMITED

STORIES FROM
THE
ARABIAN NIGHTS

天 方 夜 譚

周 越 然 註 釋

ENGLISH SELF-STUDY SERIES

英 文 自 修 叢 書

THE COMMERCIAL PRESS, LIMITED
SHANGHAI, CHINA
1946

(81092·3修)

英文自修叢書

天 方 夜 譚

附漢文釋義

English Self-Study Series

Stories from the Arabian Nights

(With Chinese Notes)

版權所有翻印必究

註 釋 者 周 越 然

發行兼印刷者 商 務 印 書 館

發 行 所 各 地 商 務 印 書 館

定 價 國 幣 陸 元

印刷地點外另加運費

中 華 民 國 六 年 九 月 初 版

中 華 民 國 三 十 五 年 五 月 第 二 〇 版

CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. HOW THE STORIES CAME TO BE TOLD	1
II. THE FISHERMAN AND THE GENIE	6
III. THE STORY OF THE ENCHANTED HORSE	11
IV. THE STORY OF PRINCE AHMED	25
V. THE HISTORY OF COGIA HASSAN ALHABEAL	44
VI. THE STORY OF ALADDIN; OR THE WONDERFUL LAMP	62
VII. THE STORY OF ALI COGIA, A MERCHANT OF BAGDAD	95
VIII. THE HISTORY OF ALI BABA, AND OF THE FORTY ROBBERS KILLED BY ONE SLAVE	105
IX. THE STORY OF ABOU HASSAN; OR, THE SLEEPER AWAKENED	128
X. THE STORY OF THE THREE SISTERS	150
XI. THE STORY OF SINDBAD THE SAILOR	172
XII. THE BARMECIDE FEAST	211
XIII. THE HISTORY OF PRINCE ZEYN ALASNAM AND THE SULTAN OF THE GENII	217

STORIES FROM THE ARABIAN NIGHTS

I

HOW THE¹ STORIES CAME² TO BE TOLD³

It is well⁴ known that in⁵ former days the Sultans⁶ of the East⁷ were great tyrants,⁸ and knew⁹ no law but their own will.¹⁰ Now¹¹ one of them had a wife who did not obey¹² him, and he was so angry that he had¹³ her put to death; and because he no¹⁴ longer had any faith¹⁵ in women, he caused¹⁶ it to be known that he meant¹⁷ to have¹⁸ a new wife every day: he would be married¹⁹ at night, and in the morning his wife was²⁰ to have her head cut off. This²¹ threw²² all the women in the kingdom into a great fright, for the Sultan would²³ have only a beautiful woman for his wife, and no one knew when her turn²⁴ would come.

¹ The stories, 本書所述故事. ² Came, 始. ³ Told, 述; 傳說.
⁴ Well known, 人人所知; 著名. ⁵ In former days, 古時; 往昔.
⁶ Sultans (sūl'tānz), 蘇丹; 回教國主. ⁷ East, 東方 (指地中海以東, 亞細亞洲西部各國). ⁸ Tyrants, 暴虐之君. ⁹ Knew no law, 不知法律 (謂行動不依法律). ¹⁰ Will, 意; 意旨. ¹¹ Now, 却說; 當時. ¹² Obey, 順從. ¹³ Had her put to death, 置之於死地; 將其處死. ¹⁴ No longer, 不復. ¹⁵ Faith, 信; 信心. ¹⁶ Caused it to be known, 將此旨宣諭全國. (I 係指下文 that he meant to have a new wife every day 一子句.) ¹⁷ Meant, 決意; 意欲. ¹⁸ Have, 即“娶”字之意. ¹⁹ Married, 成婚. ²⁰ Was to have her head cut off, 當受斬首之刑.
²¹ This, 此諭. ²² Threw all the women in the kingdom into a great fright, 陷全國婦女於大恐慌; 使全國婦女爲之震恐. threw . . . into, 置 . . . 於; 投 . . . 入. kingdom, 王國. fright, 驚懼. ²³ Would have only, 祇要; 必求. ²⁴ Turn, 輪及之期 (謂厄運之及身也).

It was the duty¹ of the Grand² Vizier to find a new wife for the Sultan each day, and you may be sure that he had³ to drag these poor⁴ girls to the palace,⁵ for no one wanted⁶ the honor⁷ of being⁸ the Sultan's wife for one night if she was to have her head cut off the next day. What was the terror,⁹ then, of the Grand Vizier, when his own daughter, Schehera-zade,¹⁰ came¹¹ forward and begged¹² to be the Sultan's wife.

"Do you know, my daughter," he asked, "what¹³ that means? Though¹⁴ you are the daughter of the Grand Vizier, that¹⁵ will not save¹⁶ your life." Now Schehera-zade was as¹⁷ brave as she was beautiful, and she said:

"I know it well, but I have thought¹⁸ of a plan by which I may put¹⁹ an end to this dreadful²⁰ state²¹ of things. If you do not take me to the Sultan, I shall go by²² myself." So the Grand Vizier went to the Sultan and told him that his own daughter begged for the honor of being the Sultan's wife for one night. The Sultan was filled²³ with wonder.

"Do not err,²⁴" he said to the Grand Vizier. "Though she is your daughter, her head must be cut off in the morning."

¹ Duty, 職; 責任. ² Grand Vizier (vī-zēr/), 元輔; 宰相 (同教國最高之官). ³ Had to drag, 必須強拖 (即不得不威迫之意). ⁴ Poor, 可憐. ⁵ Palace, 宮; 王宮. ⁶ Wanted, 欲; 欲得. ⁷ Honor, 榮; 虛榮. ⁸ Being, 爲. ⁹ Terror, 驚懼; 惶恐. ¹⁰ Schehera-zade (shē-hā/rā-zā/dē), 人名. ¹¹ Came forward, 來前; 至其面前. ¹² Begged, 求; 懇求. ¹³ What that means, 此爲何事; 此事將有何等之結果. ¹⁴ Though, 雖; 雖然. ¹⁵ That, 此事 (指上文 Though you are . . . Grand Vizier 一語). ¹⁶ Save your life, 免汝一死. ¹⁷ As brave as she was beautiful, 其勇與其美埒 (謂勇美筆埒). as . . . as, 一樣; 相同. ¹⁸ Thought of a plan, 思得一策. thought of, 想得; 想起. plan, 計策; 方法. ¹⁹ Put an end to, 使之終止; 使之消滅. ²⁰ Dreadful, 可怕; 可畏; 慘酷. ²¹ State of things, 情形; 情事. ²² By myself, 自行. ²³ Filled with wonder, 滿腹驚疑; 大爲詫怪. filled, 充滿. wonder, 驚異. ²⁴ Err, 錯誤.

"I know it well," said the Grand Vizier sadly;¹ "but you know how² it is with daughters. It is hard³ to say⁴ 'no' to them."

Now when Schéhera-zade was led⁵ into⁶ the presence of the Sultan, her veil⁷ was lifted,⁸ and the Sultan saw that she was very fair.⁹ But he saw also that there were tears¹⁰ in her eyes.

"Why do you weep?¹¹" said he.

"I weep," she said, "because¹² of my sister. I have the honor to be the wife of the Sultan; but I love¹³ my sister, and I cannot bear¹⁴ the thought of saying¹⁵ good-by to her now. Grant¹⁶ me one favor.¹⁷ Let her pass¹⁸ this one night on a couch¹⁹ near me."

The Sultan had already been won²⁰ by the beauty²¹ of Schehera-zade, and he found it easy²² to grant the favor. So the younger sister, Dinar-zade,²³ was brought²⁴ in. Now Schehera-zade had told her sister how she was to act,²⁵ and about an hour before dawn²⁶ Dinar-zade, who was wide-awake,²⁷ spoke and said:

"Sister, if you are not asleep,²⁸ I wish you would tell me one of those delightful²⁹ stories you know so well. It will soon be light.³⁰" Schehera-zade turned³¹ to the Sultan and said:

¹ Sadly, 現憂鬱之狀。 ² How it is with daughters, 女孩之常態(謂女之於父, 往往撒嬌, 不可理喻也)。 ³ Hard, 難。 ⁴ Say 'no' to, 不允; 拒絕。 ⁵ Led, 引; 導。 ⁶ Into the presence of, 至...前。 ⁷ Veil, 覆面之巾。 ⁸ Lifted, 揭去。 ⁹ Fair, 美; 麗。 ¹⁰ Tears, 淚。 ¹¹ Weep, 泣; 流淚。 ¹² Because of, 因為; 爲。 ¹³ Love, 愛。 ¹⁴ Bear, 忍。 ¹⁵ Saying good-by, 告別; 訣別。 good-by 或作 good-bye, 告別詞, 爲 God be with ye 之簡語, 意爲 "願上帝與汝, 降汝以福," 且以慰行人也, 亦如華言 "一路福星" 之意耳。 ¹⁶ Grant, 准; 賜。 ¹⁷ Favor, 恩。 ¹⁸ Pass... night, 過夜。 ¹⁹ Couch, 榻。 ²⁰ Won by, 爲...所制勝。 ²¹ Beauty, 麗色; 麗處。 ²² Easy, 易。 ²³ Dinar-zade (dē-nār/zā/dē), 人名。 ²⁴ Brought in, 引入; 導入。 ²⁵ Act, 爲。 ²⁶ Dawn, 天亮; 黎明; 旦。 ²⁷ Wide-awake, 清醒。 ²⁸ Asleep, 安睡。 ²⁹ Delightful, 可喜。 ³⁰ Light, 天明。 ³¹ Turned, 轉; 轉身。

“Will Your¹ Highness suffer² me to tell my sister a story?”

“Freely,³” said the Sultan, who liked stories himself; and Schehera-zade began to tell a story, and she told it in such a way⁴ that, when daylight⁵ came, she had reached⁶ the most interesting⁷ point.⁸ But at daylight the Sultan must⁹ needs rise and go to his council.¹⁰

“That is a most interesting story,” said Dinar-zade, “but how does it end?¹¹”

“The end is more strange¹² than the beginning,¹³” said her sister. “If Your Highness,” she said, turning to the Sultan, “will let me live one more day, I can then finish¹⁴ the story.”

The Sultan wanted very much to hear the end, so he gave Schehera-zade one more day to live, meaning¹⁵ to have her head cut off after that. But when the next morning came, and Dinar-zade asked¹⁶ for the rest¹⁷ of the story, Schehera-zade told it in such a way that it carried¹⁸ her into the middle of another story; and daylight came, and that story was not done.¹⁹ The Sultan put²⁰ off her death one day more.

Thus²¹ it went²² on and on; a story was never done, and for a thousand²³ and one nights Schehera-zade told her stories to the Sultan. By²⁴ that time, though she had not

¹ Your Highness, 吾王; 殿下. ² Suffer, 許; 允. ³ Freely, 任意; 隨便. ⁴ Way, 方法; 講法. ⁵ Daylight came, 天明. daylight, 日光. ⁶ Reached, 到; 講到. ⁷ Interesting, 有趣味. ⁸ Point, 點; 處. ⁹ Must needs (作 must necessarily 解), 必須. ¹⁰ Council, 國事會議. ¹¹ End, 完結; 終了; 結束. ¹² Strange, 離奇; 怪異. ¹³ Beginning, 首; 起始. ¹⁴ Finish, 講完. ¹⁵ Meaning, 意在. ¹⁶ Asked for, 請; 請講. ¹⁷ Rest, 其餘; 未盡者. ¹⁸ Carried her into the middle, 彼正講至中間, carried her into, 挾之入於. ¹⁹ Done, 終了; 完畢. ²⁰ Put off, 延; 移後. ²¹ Thus, 如是. ²² Went on and on, 繼續; 日復一日. ²³ Thousand, 千. ²⁴ By that time, 迨夫此時 (指一千零一夜之後).

told nearly all her stories, the Sultan had grown¹ so fond² of her, and had come to have such faith in her, that he forgot³ the wife who once⁴ did not obey, and made it known throughout⁵ the kingdom that Schehera-zade was to be the one Sultanness⁶ so⁷ long as he lived. The Grand Vizier and all the people had great joy⁸ at this; all the girls in the kingdom once⁹ more breathed¹⁰ freely, and Schehera-zade kept¹¹ on telling her stories.

Now these are some of the tales¹² of the¹³ Thousand and One Nights.

¹ Grown, 漸漸. ² Fond of, 愛; 寵愛. ³ Forgot, 忘. ⁴ Once, 從前; 昔. ⁵ Throughout, 徧; 遍. ⁶ Sultanness (sùl/tán-ēs) 或作 sultana (sùl-tā/nà), 回教國主之后. ⁷ So long as he lived, 當其在世之時. so . . . as 或 as . . . as, 皆作“同一”解. ⁸ Joy, 快樂. ⁹ Once more, 復得; 又. ¹⁰ Breathed freely, 自由呼吸(謂無庸畏懼也). ¹¹ Kept on, 繼續. kept (作 continued 解), 相繼不絕也. ¹² Tales, 故事; 傳說之事. (Story 與 tale 二字, 意義微有不同, story 所敘之事, 有實有者; 有虛構者; tale 之事, 每爲虛構而非實有. 詳見拙譯英語歧字辨異, 上海商務印書館出版). ¹³ The Thousand and One Nights, 一千零一夜, 卽 Arabian Nights (天方夜譚) 之別名.

II

THE FISHERMAN¹ AND THE GENIE²

THERE WAS ONCE an old Fisherman who was very poor. He could hardly³ keep⁴ himself, his wife, and his three children from starving. Every morning he went out early to⁵ fish, but he had made⁶ it a rule never to cast⁷ his net⁸ more than four⁹ times a day.

One day he went to the seashore¹⁰ before it was light. He cast his net, and then, when he thought it time,¹¹ he drew¹² it in to the shore.¹³ It was very heavy,¹⁴ and he was sure he had a good draft¹⁵ of fishes.¹⁶ But no! he pulled¹⁷ hard, and when he had his net on the beach¹⁸ he found he had dragged in a dead ass.¹⁹

He cast it a second time, and again he waited.²⁰ Then he slowly drew it in, for it was very heavy. This time his hopes rose,²¹ but when the net came ashore²² he found it held²³ only an old basket²⁴ filled with sand²⁵ and mud.²⁶

¹ Fisherman, 捕魚者; 漁人. ² Genie (jě/ní) 或作 jinnee (jǐ-ně/), 鬼神; 魔鬼; 妖物. ³ Hardly, 難; 幾乎不能. ⁴ Keep . . . from starving, 免於飢餓. keep . . . from, 使免. starving, 飢; 凍餓. ⁵ To fish, 捕魚. ⁶ Made it a rule, 以爲定例; 習以爲常. ⁷ Cast, 丟擲 (即“投入河中”之意). ⁸ Net, 網; 捕魚之網. ⁹ Four times, 四次. ¹⁰ Seashore, 海濱. ¹¹ Time (即 proper time 之意), 適當之時. ¹² Drew . . . in, 拖起; 收入. ¹³ Shore, 岸. ¹⁴ Heavy, 重. ¹⁵ Draft (dráft), 一網能容之量; 一大網. ¹⁶ Fishes, 魚. ¹⁷ Pulled hard, 用力拖曳; 用力收網. hard (作硬狀字用), 奮力; 竭力. ¹⁸ Beach, 海灘; 海濱. ¹⁹ Ass, 驢. ²⁰ Waited, 等候 (謂候適當之時而起其網也). ²¹ Rose, 起; 增高; 增進. ²² Ashore (即 a [on] 與 shore [岸] 二字之合), 至岸上. ²³ Held, 容納; 含. ²⁴ Basket, 籃; 筐. ²⁵ Sand, 沙泥. ²⁶ Mud, 污泥.

Once more he threw his net. The third time never fails,¹ he thought. Again the net came slowly ashore. But when he opened it, there was nothing in it but stones,² shells,³ and seaweed.⁴ The poor man was sore⁵ distressed. It looked⁶ as if he should have nothing to take home to his wife and children.

It was now dawn, and he stopped to say his prayers,⁷ for in the East pious⁸ men say their prayers five times a day. And after he had said his prayers he cast his net for the fourth and last⁹ time. When he had waited long enough,¹⁰ he drew the net in, and saw that it was very heavy.

There was not a fish in the net. Instead,¹¹ the Fisherman drew¹² out a copper¹³ jar.¹⁴ He set¹⁵ it up, and the mouth of the jar was covered¹⁶ with a lid¹⁷ which was sealed¹⁸ with lead.¹⁹ He shook²⁰ the jar, but could hear nothing.

“At²¹ any rate,” he said to himself, “I can sell this to a coppersmith²² and get some money²³ for it.” But first, though it seemed empty,²⁴ he thought he would open it. So he took his knife²⁵ and cut away the lead. Then he took²⁶ the lid off. But he could see nothing inside. He

¹ Fails, 不遂所欲; 失敗; 使人失望. ² Stones, 石. ³ Shells, 蚌殼.
⁴ Seaweed, 海藻. ⁵ Sore distressed, 大感痛苦. sore = greatly (疏狀字). ⁶ Looked as if, 勢似; 似有...之勢. looked, 有...之貌; 有...之勢. as if, 似乎; 儼然. ⁷ Prayers, 祈禱上帝之辭; 禱告文. ⁸ Pious, 虔誠; 誠敬 (指事神言). ⁹ Last, 末; 最後. ¹⁰ Enough (作 very 或 quite 解), 極; 甚 (此疏狀字每每置於他疏狀字之後).
¹¹ Instead, 反是. ¹² Drew out, 曳出; 取出. ¹³ Copper, 赤銅; 紫銅.
¹⁴ Jar, 瓶; 甕. ¹⁵ Set... up, 豎起; 擺好. ¹⁶ Covered, 蓋. ¹⁷ Lid, 蓋.
¹⁸ Sealed, 封; 固封. ¹⁹ Lead, 鉛. ²⁰ Shook, 搖動. ²¹ At any rate, 無論如何. rate, 率; 準繩. ²² Coppersmith, 銅匠. ²³ Money, 銀; 銀錢.
²⁴ Empty, 空. ²⁵ Knife, 小刀. ²⁶ Took... off, 去; 除去.

turned¹ the jar upside down, and tapped² it on the bottom,³ but nothing came out. He set the jar upright⁴ again, and sat and looked at it.

Soon he saw a light⁵ smoke come⁶ slowly forth. The smoke grew heavier,⁷ and thicker,⁸ so⁹ that he had to step¹⁰ back a few paces.¹¹ It rose and spread¹² till¹³ it shut¹⁴ everything out, like a great fog.¹⁵ At¹⁶ last it had wholly left¹⁷ the jar and had risen into the sky.¹⁸ Then it gathered¹⁹ itself together into a solid²⁰ mass, and there, before the Fisherman, stood a²¹ great giant of a Genie.

“Get²² down on your knees,” said the Genie to the Fisherman, “for I am going²³ to kill you.”

“And why do you kill me? Did I not set²⁴ you free from the jar?”

“That is the very²⁵ reason²⁶ I mean to kill you; but I will grant you one favor.”

“And what is that?” asked the Fisherman.

“I will let you choose²⁷ the manner²⁸ of your death. Listen,²⁹ and I will tell you my story.³⁰ I was one of the

¹ Turned . . . upside down, 倒置; 翻過來. ² Tapped, 輕拍; 輕擊.
³ Bottom, 底. ⁴ Upright, 直; 豎; 正. ⁵ Light smoke, 稀煙. ⁶ Come . . . forth, 出來; 出發. ⁷ Heavier, 漸密. ⁸ Thicker, 漸濃. ⁹ So that 所以; 是以; 因此. ¹⁰ Step back, 退後. ¹¹ Paces, 步. ¹² Spread, 展; 布; 張. ¹³ Till, 及; 至. ¹⁴ Shut . . . out, 遮蔽. ¹⁵ Fog, 霧. ¹⁶ At last, 最後. ¹⁷ Left, 離開; 離去. ¹⁸ Sky, 天空. ¹⁹ Gathered . . . together, 集合; 凝聚. ²⁰ Solid mass, 定質之體; 實體. ²¹ A great giant of a Genie, 一巨大之妖魔 (此 of 乃表示二名字之同位關係, 其在前之名字, 爲申釋其在後之名字者, 如 great giant 乃所以狀 genie 之大, 此二名字, 實有同位之關係, of 即所以表示此種關係也. 見 Baskerville and Sewell's English Grammar, p. 215). giant, 巨靈. ²² Get down on your knees, 跪下. knees, 膝. ²³ Going to, 將. ²⁴ Set . . . free, 釋放. ²⁵ Very (作區別字用), 實在. ²⁶ Reason, 原因; 理由. ²⁷ Choose, 選擇. ²⁸ Manner, 方法; 種類. ²⁹ Listen, 試聽聽之; 聽取. ³⁰ Story, 事跡; 歷史.

spirits¹ of heaven.² The great and wise Solomon³ bade⁴ me obey his laws. I was angry and would not. So, to punish⁵ me, he shut⁶ me up in a copper jar and sealed it with lead. Then he gave the jar to a Genie who obeyed him, and bade him cast it into the sea.

“During⁷ the first hundred⁸ years that I lay⁹ on the floor¹⁰ of the sea, I made¹¹ a promise that if any one set me free I would make him very rich. But no one came to set me free. During the second hundred years, I made a promise that if any one set me free I would show¹² him all the treasures¹³ of the earth.¹⁴ But no one came to set me free. During the third hundred years, I made a promise that if any one came to set me free I would make him king over¹⁵ all the earth, and grant him every day any three things he might ask.¹⁶

“Still¹⁷ no one came. Then I became very angry, and as hundreds of years went by, and I still lay in the jar at the bottom of the sea, I swore¹⁸ a great oath that now if any one should set me free I would at¹⁹ once kill him, and that the only²⁰ favor I would grant him would be to let him choose his manner of death. So now you have come and have set me free. You must die, but I will let you say how you shall die.”

¹ Spirits, 神靈. ² Heaven, 天; 天堂. ³ Solomon (söl/6-mün), 所羅門 (大衛 [David] 之子, 以色列國 [Israel] 之王, 生平以智見稱, 舊約全書 [Old Testament] 中箴言 [Proverbs] 一篇, 即其所著). ⁴ Bade (bäd), 吩咐; 命令. ⁵ Punish, 責罰; 罰. ⁶ Shut . . . up, 幽閉; 禁錮. ⁷ During, 當 . . . 之時. ⁸ Hundred, 百. ⁹ Lay, 臥; 蟄伏. ¹⁰ Floor, 底. ¹¹ Made a promise, 爲一種之約言, 如懸賞者然. ¹² Show, 指示. ¹³ Treasures, 財物; 寶藏. ¹⁴ Earth, 地; 地球. ¹⁵ Over all the earth, 全世界; 天下. ¹⁶ Ask, 要求. ¹⁷ Still, 仍; 依然. ¹⁸ Swore a great oath, 立一重誓. swore, 發誓. oath, 誓言. ¹⁹ At once, 立刻; 即時. ²⁰ Only, 唯一; 獨一.

The Fisherman was in great grief.¹ He did not care² so much for himself, for he was old and poor, but he thought of his wife and children, who would be left³ to starve.

"Alas!⁴" he cried. "Have⁵ pity on me. If it had not been for me you would not be free."

"Make⁶ haste!" said the Genie. "Tell me how you wish to die."

When one is in such great peril⁷ his wits⁸ fly⁹ fast, and sometimes they fly into safety.¹⁰ The Fisherman said:

"Since¹¹ I must die, I must. But before I die answer¹² me one question.¹³"

"Ask what you will, but make haste."

"Dare¹⁴ you, then, swear¹⁵ that you really¹⁶ were in the jar? It is so small, and you are so vast,¹⁷ that the great toe¹⁸ of one of your feet could not be held in it."

"Verily¹⁹ I was in the jar. I swear it. Do you not believe²⁰ it?"

"No, not until²¹ I see you in the jar."

At²² that the Genie, to prove²³ it, changed²⁴ again into smoke. The great cloud²⁵ hung²⁶ over the earth, and one end²⁷ of it entered²⁸ the jar. Slowly the cloud descended²⁹ until the sky was clear,³⁰ and the last tip³¹ of the cloud was in the jar. As³² soon as this was done, the Fisherman clapped³³ the lid on again, and the Genie was shut up inside.

¹ Grief, 憂愁. ² Care, 留意; 注意. ³ Left, 遺下. ⁴ Alas, 哀哉 (感嘆字). ⁵ Have pity on me, 幸憐我. pity, 憐恤. ⁶ Make haste, 趕快. ⁷ Peril, 危險; 危難; 危急. ⁸ Wits, 智; 機智. ⁹ Fly fast, 敏捷 (如鳥之捷飛也). ¹⁰ Safety, 平安. ¹¹ Since, 既. ¹² Answer, 答; 回答. ¹³ Question, 問; 問題. ¹⁴ Dare you = do you dare. dare, 敢. ¹⁵ Swear, 誓言. ¹⁶ Really, 真; 實在. ¹⁷ Vast, 巨大. ¹⁸ Toe, 足趾. ¹⁹ Verily (作 really 解), 實在; 果真. ²⁰ Believe, 信; 相信. ²¹ Until, 直至. ²² At that, 聞此語. ²³ Prove, 證明. ²⁴ Changed, 變; 化. ²⁵ Cloud, 雲 (指此 genie 所化之煙). ²⁶ Hung over, 覆蓋. ²⁷ End, 頭; 端. ²⁸ Entered, 進; 入. ²⁹ Descended, 下降; 下沉. ³⁰ Clear, 清爽; 清明. ³¹ Tip, 尖頭; 端. ³² As soon as (作 immediately after 解), . . . 之後 . . . 即. ³³ Clapped, 急置; 急蓋.

III

THE STORY OF THE ENCHANTED¹ HORSE

I

New² Year's Day is a great feast³ day in Persia.⁴ On one of these feast days the Emperor⁵ of Persia was seated⁶ on his throne⁷ in⁸ the midst of his people, when a Hindu⁹ appeared¹⁰ leading a strange horse. At¹¹ first sight the horse looked like any other horse, except¹² that it was very handsome¹³ and bore¹⁴ a very costly¹⁵ saddle¹⁶ and bridle.¹⁷ But, on looking more closely,¹⁸ one saw that it was not a live¹⁹ horse, but one that had been very artfully²⁰ made by man. The Hindu knelt²¹ before the throne and pointed²² to the horse.

"This horse," he said to the Emperor, "is a great wonder.²³ If I mount²⁴ him I can make him go²⁵ through the air to any place I choose, and he will go in²⁶ a very short time. No one has ever seen such a wonder, and I have brought him here to show to you. If you wish, I will show you what he can do."

¹ Enchanted, 爲魔術所驅使. ² New Year's Day, 元旦日. ³ Feast day, 節日. feast, 盛筵; 宴會. ⁴ Persia (pūr'shā), 波斯國(在中央亞細亞之西部). ⁵ Emperor, 皇帝. ⁶ Seated, 坐. ⁷ Throne, 寶座. ⁸ In the midst of, 在 . . . 之中. ⁹ Hindu (hīn'dōō), 印度人; 身毒國人; 天竺國人. ¹⁰ Appeared, 來前. ¹¹ At first sight, 初視之; 初見時. ¹² Except, 除 . . . 之外. ¹³ Handsome, 美; 俊偉. ¹⁴ Bore, 被. ¹⁵ Costly, 貴重; 重價. ¹⁶ Saddle, 鞍. ¹⁷ Bridle, 轡. ¹⁸ Closely, 仔細. ¹⁹ Live, 生; 活. ²⁰ Artfully, 巧妙; 有巧思. ²¹ Knelt, 跪. ²² Pointed, 指. ²³ Wonder, 奇物; 不可思議之物. ²⁴ Mount, 騎; 乘. ²⁵ Go through, 行經. ²⁶ In a very short time, 一剎那間; 瞬息之間.

The Emperor was very fond of strange things, and he was much pleased¹ at such a sight.² So he told the Hindu to mount his horse. The Hindu did so, and asked where he was to ride.³

“Do you see that far-off⁴ mountain?⁵” said the Emperor. “Ride your horse there, and bring me a branch⁶ of a palm⁷ tree that grows⁸ at the foot⁹ of it.” No¹⁰ sooner had the Emperor said this than the Hindu turned¹¹ a peg which was in the horse’s neck near the saddle, and away went the horse into the air and straight¹² toward the mountain. The Emperor and all the people gazed¹³ after him till the horse was a¹⁴ mere speck. Then he was out¹⁵ of sight. But in a¹⁶ quarter of an hour the horse had come back. The Hindu got¹⁷ off his back,¹⁸ and came to the throne with the palm branch in his hand.

The Emperor had a great wish¹⁹ to own²⁰ the horse, and he offered²¹ to buy²² him of the Hindu.

“I will sell²³ him,” said the Hindu, “if you will pay²⁴ me my price.²⁵”

“And what is your price?” asked the Emperor.

¹ Pleased, 喜悅. ² Sight, 所見之物. ³ Ride, 騎往; 乘赴. ⁴ Far-off 遙遠. ⁵ Mountain, 高山. ⁶ Branch, 枝; 樹枝. ⁷ Palm tree, 椰樹. ⁸ Grows, 生長. ⁹ Foot, 腳; 山麓. ¹⁰ No sooner . . . than, 一經 . . . 即; 當 . . . 之時已 . . . (謂事之先後銜接, 有若同時也). ¹¹ Turned a peg, 轉動木釘; 將木栓旋轉. ¹² Straight toward, 向 . . . 直去; 向 . . . 前進. straight (作疏狀字 directly 解), 直; 逕. ¹³ Gazed, 凝視; 注目而視. ¹⁴ A mere speck, 僅一黑子; 僅一小點. mere, 僅; 不過. speck, 小點. ¹⁵ Out of sight, 不見; 形影全無. ¹⁶ A quarter of an hour, 一刻鐘; 十五分鐘. quarter, 四分之一. ¹⁷ Got off, 離開; 離去 (即“下馬”之意). ¹⁸ Back, 背. ¹⁹ Wish, 願; 願望. ²⁰ Own, 使爲己有; 得. ²¹ Offered, 示意; 爲一種之提議; 商. ²² Buy, 買; 購. buy . . . of . . . = buy . . . (物) from . . . (人). ²³ Sell, 賣. ²⁴ Pay, 付; 付給. ²⁵ Price, 價.

"If you will give me your daughter for a wife, you may have my horse." At this all the people laughed¹ aloud, but the son of the Emperor was very angry.

"Do not listen to the wretch,²" said the Prince.³ "This juggler to come into the family of the greatest of kings!"

"I will not grant him what he asks," said the Emperor. "Perhaps⁵ he does not mean really to ask such a price, and I have another bargain⁶ to propose.⁷ But before I say anything more I should like to have you try⁸ the horse yourself."

The Hindu was quite⁹ willing¹⁰ and ran forward to help the Prince mount, and to show him how to manage¹² the horse. But the Prince was too¹³ quick for him, and sprang¹⁴ into the saddle without aid,¹⁵ turned the peg, and away they flew.¹⁶ In¹⁷ a few moments neither Prince nor Enchanted Horse was to be seen.

The Hindu flung¹⁸ himself at the foot¹⁹ of the throne and begged the Emperor not to be angry with him.

"Why did you not call to him when you saw him going?" said the Emperor.

¹ Laughed aloud, 大笑; 鬨然大笑. ² Wretch, 賤奴; 無賴漢 (爲一種之惡稱, 此指印度人). ³ Prince, 王子; 太子. ⁴ This juggler to come into the family of the greatest of kings! 此術士乃欲論婚王族乎. juggler, 術士; 以邪術眩人者. family, 家. the greatest of kings, 世界君主中最尊嚴者. ⁵ Perhaps, 或者. ⁶ Bargain, 交易方法; 買賣上之要約. ⁷ Propose, 提出; 與商. ⁸ Try; 試. ⁹ Quite, 極; 甚. ¹⁰ Willing, 願意. ¹¹ Help, 幫助. ¹² Manage, 駕馭. ¹³ Too quick for him, 太敏捷, 使彼不及扶助指導 (謂印人甚願扶掖王子騎乘, 并教以駕馭之法, 乃王子趨捷, 使彼不及也). ¹⁴ Sprang, 跳; 躍. ¹⁵ Aid, 幫助. ¹⁶ Flew, 飛 (謂其去之疾). ¹⁷ In a few moments, 數分時間; 片刻; 未幾. ¹⁸ Flung himself at, 突然跪伏於. ¹⁹ Foot of the throne, 寶座之前; 寶座之下.

"Sire,¹" said he, "you yourself saw how quickly he went. I was so taken² by surprise that I lost³ my wits; and when I came⁴ to my senses he was out⁵ of sight and hearing. But, sire, let us hope that the Prince may find the other peg. If he turns that the horse will come back to earth again."

"Even if my son does find the other peg," said the Emperor, "how do we know that the horse may not come down in the middle of the sea?"

"Be at⁶ ease about that," said the Hindu. "The horse crosses⁷ seas without ever falling into them, and he will obey the rider⁸ who turns the peg."

"That may be," said the Emperor. "But know that unless⁹ my son does come home safe,¹⁰ or I hear that he is alive¹¹ and well,¹² you shall lose¹³ your head." And so he bade the officers¹⁴ shut up the Hindu in prison.¹⁵

II

Now when the Prince turned¹⁶ the key on the neck of the Enchanted Horse, horse and rider flew through the air like¹⁷ the wind. Up¹⁸ and up they went, and, as the horse was not a real horse, it did not get¹⁹ tired and stop.²⁰ The Prince did not know what²¹ to do. He turned the peg

¹ Sire, 大王; 陛下. ² Taken by surprise, 出其不意; 驚駭失措. taken, 爲... 所襲. ³ Lost, 失. ⁴ Came to my senses, 驚定; 智識恢復原狀; 復其常度. ⁵ Out of sight and hearing (即 out of sight 及 out of hearing 二仿語之合), 既不能見, 又不能聞(言其遠也). ⁶ At ease, 放心; 安心. ⁷ Crosses, 渡越; 橫過. ⁸ Rider, 騎者. ⁹ Unless, 除非. ¹⁰ Safe, 平安. ¹¹ Alive, 活. ¹² Well, 安全; 康寧. ¹³ Lose your head, 失汝之首; 難保汝之首領. ¹⁴ Officers, 官吏; 職官. ¹⁵ Prison, 監牢; 監獄. ¹⁶ Turned the key, 撥動其機. ¹⁷ Like the wind, 迅捷如風. ¹⁸ Up and up, 益復向上. ¹⁹ Get tired, 覺倦. ²⁰ Stop, 停止. ²¹ What to do, 如何是好.

backward,¹ but that did not stop the horse. Then he began to search² for another peg, and at last he found a small peg behind the ear. He turned that, and at once the horse began to move³ toward the earth.

They did not go back as swiftly⁴ as they went up. It grew⁵ dark and the Prince did not know where they would alight.⁶ He could do nothing, so he let the reins⁷ lie on the neck of the horse and sat still.

At last he⁸ felt⁸ the earth beneath the horse's feet. The horse stopped, and the Prince got off, cold⁹ and stiff¹⁰ and very hungry.¹¹ He looked¹² about him as¹³ well as he could in the middle¹⁴ of the night, and saw that they were before the door of a palace.

The door stood¹⁵ ajar, and the Prince went in. He found¹⁶ himself in a hall¹⁷ lighted¹⁸ by a dim¹⁹ lamp.²⁰ There, fast²¹ asleep, were some soldiers,²² with swords²³ by their side.²⁴ They were there to guard²⁵ some one, and, as another door stood open, the Prince passed²⁶ through into the inner²⁷ room. There he saw lying²⁸ on a couch a most beautiful woman, asleep, and about her, also asleep, were her maids.²⁹

The Prince knelt by the side of the couch and gazed at the fair creature.³⁰ Then he gently³¹ twitched³² her

¹ Backward, 向後. ² Search for, 尋; 覓. ³ Move toward, 向... 而行. ⁴ Swiftly, 快捷. ⁵ Grew dark, 漸漸昏黑; 漸晚. ⁶ Alight, 下騎. ⁷ Reins, 韁. ⁸ Felt the earth beneath the horse's feet, 覺馬足下已有地矣. ⁹ Cold, 冷. ¹⁰ Stiff, 僵; 肢體強硬. ¹¹ Hungry, 飢. ¹² Looked about him, 四面觀看. ¹³ As well as he could, 極其力之所能. ¹⁴ Middle of the night, 半夜; 深夜. ¹⁵ Stood ajar, 半開. ¹⁶ Found himself in, 覺其身已在...之內; 至. ¹⁷ Hall, 大廳; 堂; 殿. ¹⁸ Lighted, 燭照. ¹⁹ Dim, 昏暗; 不明. ²⁰ Lamp, 燈. ²¹ Fast asleep, 熟睡. ²² Soldiers, 兵卒. ²³ Swords, 刀; 劍. ²⁴ Side, 旁邊 (指腰際). ²⁵ Guard, 保衛; 守衛. ²⁶ Passed through into, 走入; 步入. ²⁷ Inner, 內; 裏面. ²⁸ Lying, 躺臥. ²⁹ Maids, 下婢; 侍婢. ³⁰ Creature, 動物; 人. ³¹ Gently, 極; 穩. ³² Twitched, 牽; 引; 拉.

sleeve,¹ and she awoke.² Her eyes fell³ on the Prince kneeling there, but she showed⁴ no fear, for, as soon as her eyes opened, he said:

“Beautiful Princess, I am the Prince of Persia. I have come here by a very strange way, and I ask you to protect⁵ me. I do not know where I am, but I know no harm⁶ can come to me when I see before me so fair a Princess.”⁷

“You are in the kingdom of Bengal,” she replied,⁹ “and I am the daughter of the King. I am living in my own palace in the country. You may be sure that no harm will come to you. If you have come from Persia, you have come a long way, and must be hungry and tired. I am very curious¹⁰ to know how you came, but first you shall have food and sleep.”

Then the Princess called her maids, and they awoke and wondered¹¹ much at what they saw. At¹² the command of the Princess they led the Prince into a hall, where they gave him food and drink. Then they led him to a room where he could sleep and left¹³ him.

As soon as it was light the Princess of Bengal arose and dressed¹⁴ herself in the most splendid¹⁵ robes she had. She put¹⁶ on her finest things and wore¹⁷ her most precious¹⁸ rings¹⁹ and bracelets.²⁰ Indeed,²¹ she quite tired²² out her maids, making them bring her one beautiful thing after

¹ Sleeve, 衣袖. ² Awoke, 醒. ³ Fell on, 見; 睹. ⁴ Showed no fear, 不現驚異之狀; 毫不驚懼. ⁵ Protect, 保護; 庇護. ⁶ Harm, 傷害; 危險. ⁷ Princess, 公主. ⁸ Bengal (bĕn-gól/), 孟加拉 (印度省名). ⁹ Replied, 答曰. ¹⁰ Curious, 急欲. ¹¹ Wondered, 驚怪. ¹² At the command of, 聞 . . . 之命. command, 命令. ¹³ Left, 離. ¹⁴ Dressed, 着; 服. ¹⁵ Splendid robes, 華麗之服. ¹⁶ Put on, 着; 佩帶. ¹⁷ Wore, 戴. ¹⁸ Precious, 貴重. ¹⁹ Rings, 指環; 戒指. ²⁰ Bracelets, 釧; 手鐲. ²¹ Indeed, 從實言之; 眞箇. ²² Tired out, 役之至於疲勞.

another before she could make¹ up her mind what to wear. When she was at last ready,² she sent³ word to the Prince that she would receive⁴ him.

Now the Prince had slept well, and had risen and dressed himself. So when the Princess sent⁵ for him he went at once into her presence and made⁶ a low bow, and thanked⁷ her for the honor⁸ she had done⁹ him. He then gave¹⁰ her an account of the strange way in which he had come, and said that he would now mount his horse and go back to Persia; for his royal¹¹ father must be in great pain,¹² not knowing where his son might be.

"Nay,¹³" said the Princess, "you must not go so soon. I wish to show you the glories¹⁴ of Bengal, that you may tell something of what you have seen in the court¹⁵ of Persia." The Prince could not refuse¹⁶ such a request,¹⁷ and thus he became the guest¹⁸ of the Princess.

Each day some new sport¹⁹ or feast was had. They hunted;²⁰ they had music;²¹ they saw games²² and plays;²³ and the time²⁴ went swiftly by.

III

But when two months had thus been spent,²⁵ the Prince could put²⁶ off his return no longer, and said²⁷ as much to

¹ Make up her mind, 決定; 定見. ² Ready, 準備; 綽綽有餘; 裝束停當. ³ Sent word to, 通知. ⁴ Receive, 接見. ⁵ Sent for, 招; 請. ⁶ Made a low bow, 深深行一鞠躬禮; 鞠躬甚敬. low, 低 (謂俯之甚, 所以示敬也). bow, 鞠躬. ⁷ I thanked, 謝. ⁸ Honor, 敬禮; 禮遇. ⁹ Done, 予; 待遇. ¹⁰ Gave . . . an account of, 備述; 從頭敘述; 詳告. account, 往事之敘述. ¹¹ Royal father, 王父. ¹² Pain, 苦痛; 苦楚. ¹³ Nay, 否; 不可. ¹⁴ Glories, 榮華 (指財物言). ¹⁵ Court, 宮廷. ¹⁶ Refuse, 拒; 辭謝. ¹⁷ Request, 邀請; 請求. ¹⁸ Guest, 客; 賓. ¹⁹ Sport, 遊戲 (如射獵競技等). ²⁰ Hunted, 打圍; 獵. ²¹ Music, 樂; 歌. ²² Games, 遊戲 (如各種競技). ²³ Plays, 戲劇. ²⁴ Time went swiftly by, 光陰迅速; 光陰如箭. went . . . by, 去不復返. swiftly, 迅速. ²⁵ Spent, 過去; 消磨. ²⁶ Put off, 延緩; 延緩. ²⁷ Said as much, 實告; 直告 (謂即告以歸期不容再緩也).

the Princess. It was indeed much harder for him now to go, for each had come to care¹ greatly for the other. The Prince had often ridden the Enchanted Horse to show the Princess what he could do, and now, when the time was come for him to take² leave, he said boldly:³

"You see, dear⁴ Princess, what a wonderful⁵ horse this is, and how perfectly⁶ I can manage him. Will you not trust⁷ yourself to me? We will ride together to my home. My father will be rejoiced⁸ to see me, and will welcome⁹ you. We will be married at the Court of Persia, and all will be well."

The Princess of Bengal was not loath¹⁰ to go, and so in the early morning, when no one was awake, she made herself ready. The Prince and the Princess got up on the Enchanted Horse; the Prince placed the horse with his head toward Persia and turned the peg. Off they went, and in two hours they reached¹¹ the capital.¹²

They stopped outside of the town at a country¹³ house belonging¹⁴ to the Prince. There the Prince bade his servants¹⁵ care¹⁶ for the Princess, and he himself went on to the palace. His father was overjoyed¹⁷ to see him, and, after he had gazed his fill¹⁸ at his son's face, he wished to know all about the Hindu's horse, and what had happened.¹⁹

¹ Care . . . for, 關切; 戀; 愛慕. ² Take leave, 與辭; 告別. ³ Boldly, 雜然. ⁴ Dear, 親愛. ⁵ Wonderful, 奇異. ⁶ Perfectly, 完全; 完美. ⁷ Trust, 託. ⁸ Rejoiced, 大喜. ⁹ Welcome, 歡迎. ¹⁰ Loath, 不喜; 不願. ¹¹ Reached, 到; 抵. ¹² Capital, 京城(指波斯國之京城). ¹³ Country house, 別墅. ¹⁴ Belonging to, 屬於. ¹⁵ Servants, 僕; 從者. ¹⁶ Care for, 照料. ¹⁷ Overjoyed, 大喜過望. ¹⁸ Fill, 滿量; 足(gazed one's fill, 卽“飽看”之意). ¹⁹ Happened, 發現.

The Prince told him all, and dwelt¹ upon the great kindness² which had been shown him in Bengal. He ended³ by telling the king how he had brought the Princess on the Enchanted Horse with him, and begged that he might be permitted⁴ to marry her; for the kingdom of Persia was more powerful⁵ than Bengal, and the Princess was not equal⁶ to him in rank.⁷

The King gladly⁸ gave his consent, and bade the Prince go at once and fetch⁹ the Princess. He sent for the Hindu also out of prison and said to him:

“I put you in prison while my son was in danger.¹⁰ Now he has returned and I set you free. Take your horse and begone.¹¹ Never let me see your face again.”

Now the Hindu had heard¹² of what had happened, and how the Prince had gone to fetch the Princess. He mounted his horse at once and went straight to the country house. He reached the place before the Prince, and told the captain¹³ of the guard¹⁴ that he had been sent¹⁵ by the King to fetch the Princess on the Enchanted Horse. The captain of the guard readily¹⁶ believed him, as did the Princess, who got up on the horse behind the Hindu.

The Hindu did indeed ride through the air to the palace, but he did not alight. He stayed¹⁷ too high up to be reached by any bow¹⁸ and arrow,¹⁹ but where the King

¹ Dwelt upon, 纏述; 詳言. ² Kindness, 仁愛 (即“厚待”之意).
³ Ended, 完結. ⁴ Permitted, 准; 允許. ⁵ Powerful, 有勢力; 強大.
⁶ Equal, 同; 同等. ⁷ Rank, 等級. ⁸ Gladly gave his consent, 欣然允諾. consent, 同意. ⁹ Fetch, 取來; 接來. ¹⁰ Danger, 危險 (此字與 peril 不同, danger 有難測者, 有易測者; peril 每爲難測者, 詳見英語歧字辨異). ¹¹ Begone (作 go away 解), 去; 速去. ¹² Heard of, 聽得; 聞知. ¹³ Captain, 隊長. ¹⁴ Guard, 守衛兵; 衛隊.
¹⁵ Sent, 遣派. ¹⁶ Readily, 容易. ¹⁷ Stayed, 停留. ¹⁸ Bow, 弓.
¹⁹ Arrow, 箭.

and his court¹ could see them. The King was beside² himself with rage,³ but he could do nothing. The Hindu mocked⁴ at him and then rode off with the Princess, no⁵ one knew where.⁵

The Prince was far⁶ more beside himself than the King, for he knew how lovely⁷ the Princess was, and here was she snatched⁸ away from him in this cruel⁹ way. He went to the country house, borne¹⁰ down with grief, that he might be where the Princess last had been. The captain of the guard fell¹¹ at his feet and besought¹² him to pardon¹³ him.

“Rise,” said the Prince, “and do not let us waste¹⁴ our time in vain¹⁵ reproaches.¹⁶ I must at once set¹⁷ forth to seek¹⁸ my Princess. Do you obtain¹⁹ for me the dress²⁰ of a pilgrim,²¹ and do not let any one know what I am to do.”

The captain did as he was bid, and the Prince pulled²² off his own dress and put on the disguise.²³ He took a box of jewels²⁴ with him and set²⁵ off in²⁶ search of the Princess.

IV

Now the Hindu had ridden with the Princess until he came to the Vale²⁷ of Cashmere.²⁸ Here he let the En-

¹ Court, 朝臣; 侍從. ² Beside himself, 昏亂; 不能自持. ³ Rage, 忿怒. ⁴ Mocked at, 嘲弄. ⁵ No one knew where, 不知何處(此字作一疏狀字用, 語中 where 一疏狀字, 作 knew 之受詞). ⁶ Far more, 更加; 愈甚. ⁷ Lovely, 可愛. ⁸ Snatched away, 擄去; 搶去. ⁹ Cruel, 兇惡. ¹⁰ Borne down with grief, 不勝憂傷; 垂頭喪氣. borne down, 爲所壓倒. ¹¹ Fell, 跪下. ¹² Besought, 求; 哀求. ¹³ Pardon, 寬宥; 赦. ¹⁴ Waste, 廢; 耗. ¹⁵ Vain, 空; 無益. ¹⁶ Reproaches, 詈責; 叱罵. ¹⁷ Set forth, 動身; 起程. ¹⁸ Seek, 尋; 覓. ¹⁹ Obtain, 求得; 取. ²⁰ Dress, 衣服. ²¹ Pilgrim, 遊行者; 往謁聖地者. ²² Pulled off, 脫去. ²³ Disguise, 喬裝; 微服. ²⁴ Jewels, 珍寶; 珠玉. ²⁵ Set off, 動身; 啓行. ²⁶ In search of, 尋覓. ²⁷ Vale, 谷(兩山間之平地). ²⁸ Cashmere 或作 Kashmir (kash-mēr), 喀什密爾(地名, 今印度省).

chanted Horse come to the ground, but he did not at once enter the city. He told the Princess he meant to have her for wife, and when she would not consent¹ he began to beat² her. She cried³ out for help, and, as good luck⁴ would⁵ have it, the Sultan of Cashmere was near⁶ at hand with some of the people of his court. He saw the Hindu raise⁷ his hand to beat the Princess, and he stopped him and asked,—

“Why do you beat this woman?”

“Because she is my wife and will not obey me. May a man not beat his own wife?”

“I am not his wife,” cried the Princess. “Sir, I do not know who you are, but I am a Princess of Bengal. This man is a wicked⁸ magician⁹ who stole¹⁰ me away just¹¹ as I was to marry the Prince of Persia, and this is the Enchanted Horse on which he brought me.”

The Sultan could¹² not help believing so beautiful a woman, and he at once bade his officers cut off the Hindu's head, and led the Princess back with him to the palace. She was overjoyed, and thought he would now restore¹³ her to the Prince of Persia. The Sultan said nothing, but placed¹⁴ her in the hands of the women of the palace and had her beautifully dressed.

The Princess heard the trumpets¹⁵ sounding and the drums¹⁶ beating. She thought this was a notice¹⁷ of her

¹ Consent, 表同意; 允許. ² Beat, 毆擊. ³ Cried out for help, 呼號求救. ⁴ Luck, 佳運; 運氣. ⁵ Would have it, 使然; 致. ⁶ Near at hand, 在近處; 相去甚近; 近在咫尺. ⁷ Raise, 舉起. ⁸ Wicked, 邪惡. ⁹ Magician, 行妖術者; 施邪術者; 魔術家. ¹⁰ Stole me away, 劫我以行; 劫我遠去. ¹¹ Just as, 正在 . . . 之時. ¹² Could not help believing, 不能不信; 不覺信之; 不禁深信. help (作 forebear, avoid 解), 禁; 忍. ¹³ Restore, 歸還 (即“送歸”之意). ¹⁴ Placed her in the hands of, 委託於. ¹⁵ Trumpets sounding, 角聲嗚嗚. ¹⁶ Drums beating, 鼓聲鑼鑼. ¹⁷ Notice, 宣布.

return; but soon the Sultan entered and told her to make¹ ready to marry him; that they should be married at once, for he had never before seen any one so beautiful, and he was sure he never should again.

The Princess was in² despair at this, and threw³ herself down in her grief. She fainted,⁴ and when she came⁵ to herself, and saw how she was in the power of the Sultan, she made⁶ believe that she had lost⁷ her mind, and began to talk in a wild,⁸ crazy⁹ manner. The Sultan could do nothing with her, so he left her in the care of the women.

V

Day¹⁰ after day went by, and the Princess was no better. The Sultan sent far¹¹ and wide for wise¹² men and doctors,¹³ but no one could cure¹⁴ the Princess. All¹⁵ Cashmere heard of this strange affair,¹⁶ and so the news¹⁷ came¹⁸ to the ears of a Pilgrim who one day came to the capital.¹⁹ The Pilgrim was no²⁰ other than the Prince of Persia, and he went straight to the Sultan.

"I am come," he said, "because I have heard of the sad²¹ fate that has befallen²² the Princess of Bengal whom you were to wed.²³ I am a wise man, and I know of a cure.²⁴"

¹ Make ready, 準備. ² In despair, 失望. ³ Throw herself down, 倒於地上. ⁴ Fainted, 昏倒. ⁵ Came to herself, 蘇醒. ⁶ Made believe, 假裝; 伴爲; 使人信爲. ⁷ Lost her mind, 喪失精神; 瘋狂. ⁸ Wild, 野; 狂. ⁹ Crazy, 瘋. ¹⁰ Day after day, 日復一日. ¹¹ Far and wide, 到處; 各處. ¹² Wise men, 巫祝. ¹³ Doctors, 醫生. ¹⁴ Cure, 醫治; 治療. ¹⁵ All Cashmere, 嘎什密爾全部之人. ¹⁶ Affair, 事. ¹⁷ News, 新聞. ¹⁸ Came to, 傳至; 達於. ¹⁹ Capital, 省會 (指嘎什密爾之省會). ²⁰ No other than, 非他, 即 . . . 是也. ²¹ Sad fate, 厄運. ²² Befallen, 降於. ²³ Wed, 結婚. ²⁴ Cure, 治療之法.

"It cannot be," said the Sultan. "The Princess loses her wits still more when a wise man comes into her presence."

"I must see her, and see her alone," said the Pilgrim. "I am sure I can cure her." So the Sultan, who was glad of one more hope, led the Pilgrim to the door of the room where the Princess was, and stood¹ back. The Princess did not know the Prince in his disguise, and flew² at him. But the Prince, when he was near her, said in a low³ voice:

"I am not a Pilgrim. I am the Prince of Persia, come to set you free. Do as I tell you." At once the Princess became quiet,⁴ and the Sultan was overjoyed at the⁵ sign of better health. The Pilgrim stayed a short time in the room and then went away. Each day he visited⁶ the Princess, and each day she grew⁷ a little better. The Sultan thought⁸ nothing too good for the Pilgrim. At last the Pilgrim said to the Sultan:

"Only one thing remains⁹ to complete¹⁰ the cure of the Princess. She came here on the Enchanted Horse. Now the charm¹¹ of the horse has passed¹² over into the Princess, and we must rid¹³ her of it in the presence of the horse. I have a strange incense¹⁴ which I will burn,¹⁵ and that will dispel¹⁶ the last remnant¹⁷ of disease.¹⁸ Let the Enchanted Horse be brought to-morrow into the great court of the

¹ Stood back, 退後. ² Flew at, 撲; 突前作攻擊之勢. ³ Low voice, 低聲. ⁴ Quiet, 靜; 安靜. ⁵ The sign of better health, 康健之兆; 復元之象. sign, 記號; 預兆. health, 康健. ⁶ Visited, 診視. ⁷ Grew, 逐漸. ⁸ Thought nothing too good for, 不知所以報之 (言其感激之極, 任以何物爲酬, 皆所不吝也). ⁹ Remains, 餘下; 存在; 未完. ¹⁰ Complete, 完全告成. ¹¹ Charm, 魔力; 妖氣. ¹² Passed over into, 侵入; 透入 (即“傳染”之意). ¹³ Rid . . . of, 除; 使 . . . 脫離. ¹⁴ Incense, 香. ¹⁵ Burn, 燒; 焚. ¹⁶ Dispel, 驅散; 驅除. ¹⁷ Remnant, 剩下者; 殘餘. ¹⁸ Disease, 病.

city, and let the Princess, clad¹ in her most costly raiment,² stand by the side of the horse.”

The Sultan bade his servants do as the Pilgrim gave³ orders, and all the people in the city were met⁴ to see the strange cure of the Princess. As they all stood watching,⁵ the Pilgrim lighted the incense, and a great smoke arose, which shut⁶ out the Enchanted Horse, the Princess, and the Pilgrim.

In⁷ a little while the smoke cleared⁸ away. There on the ground⁹ lay the dress of a Pilgrim; high up in the air was the Enchanted Horse, and on it the Princess and a Prince. The head of the horse was turned towards Persia.

¹ Clad, 服; 着. ² Raiment, 衣服 (此字祇用單數而不用複數, 今已變而不用矣). ³ Gave orders, 命令; 吩咐. ⁴ Met, 集; 集合. ⁵ Watching, 注視. ⁶ Shut out, 遮蔽. ⁷ In a little while, 未幾; 轉瞬之間. while (作 time 解). ⁸ Cleared away, 散去. ⁹ Ground, 地.

IV

THE STORY OF PRINCE AHMED¹

I

THERE was a Sultan of India who, after a long reign,² had reached a good³ old age. He had three sons: the eldest was named Houssain,⁴ the second Ali,⁵ the youngest Ahmed. He had also a beautiful niece⁶ who had grown⁷ up with his sons.

Now, when his niece was old enough to marry, the Sultan sought⁸ for a husband⁹ among the princes of the country. But no sooner did he make this known than he found that each of his sons was in¹⁰ love with the girl. This made him most unhappy, for he saw¹¹ that if one married her the others would quarrel¹² with him. He called his three sons to him and said:

"My sons, I see that it will go¹³ hard with you. Your cousin loves each of you, but she can marry one only. We must find some way by which you can agree.¹⁴ Let each go¹⁵ on a journey to a separate¹⁶ country, and return here twelve months from to-day. I will give you each a large sum¹⁷ of money that you may travel¹⁸ as befits¹⁹ your rank.²⁰

¹ Ahmed (ä/mëd), 人名. ² Reign, 國君在位之時期; 御宇之期.
³ Good (作 considerable [大, 多, 不少] 解), 極也. ⁴ Houssain (hōō-sän'), 人名. ⁵ Ali (ä/lä), 人名. ⁶ Niece, 姪女. ⁷ Grown up, 生長.
⁸ Sought for, 覓. ⁹ Husband, 夫. ¹⁰ In love with, 與 . . . 相愛.
¹¹ Saw, 知. ¹² Quarrel with, 爭; 爭鬧. ¹³ Go hard with you, 不利於汝. go hard, 釀成不幸. ¹⁴ Agree, 同意; 允從. ¹⁵ Go on a journey, 出門; 遊歷. journey, 行路. ¹⁶ Separate, 不同; 各別. ¹⁷ Sum of money, 款; 一宗金錢. ¹⁸ Travel, 遊歷; 旅行. ¹⁹ Befits, 適合; 配. ²⁰ Rank, 地位; 身分.

Then let each bring back some rare¹ gift, and he who brings the rarest shall have the Princess, my niece.”

They agreed to this, and set forth a² day's journey together. At the end of the day they slept at an inn,³ and when the morning came they parted,⁴ agreeing to meet at the same place in a year lacking⁵ two days.

Prince Houssain went to the seacoast,⁶ to a town⁷ where merchants⁸ came together from all⁹ parts of the world. Here he saw shops¹⁰ filled with wonderful goods.¹¹ Indeed, as he walked on and on, he became very tired, and was glad when a merchant asked him to sit down in¹² front of his shop. As he rested,¹³ a man passed¹⁴ by with a carpet¹⁵ about six feet square,¹⁶ and cried with a loud¹⁷ voice that its price was forty purses.¹⁸ The Prince called him to him, and looked at the carpet.

“This is a good carpet,” said he, “but why should it cost¹⁹ so much? I see nothing wonderful about it.”

“It is true,” said the crier,²⁰ “you can see nothing wonderful, and yet this carpet is well²¹ worth forty purses; for if you own the carpet and sit on it, you will be carried to any place you wish in²² the twinkle of an eye.”

“If that be so,” said the Prince, “it is well worth its price.”

¹ Rare gift, 罕有之物; 珍品. rare, 罕有; 稀少. gift, 禮物; 贈品. ² A day's journey, 一日之程. ³ Inn, 客店; 旅舍. ⁴ Parted, 分離; 分別. ⁵ Lacking, 缺. ⁶ Seacoast, 海岸. ⁷ Town, 城; 都會. ⁸ Merchants, 商人. ⁹ All parts, 各處 (即“各國”之意). ¹⁰ Shops, 店; 舖. ¹¹ Goods, 貨物. ¹² In front of, 在 . . . 之前. ¹³ Rested, 休息 (謂坐下也). ¹⁴ Passed by, 走過; 經過. ¹⁵ Carpet, 地毯. ¹⁶ Square, 方; 正方形. ¹⁷ Loud, 響; 高聲. ¹⁸ Purses, 土耳其錢幣之名, 每一 purse 合美國二十四元七角一分半 (金幣), 或英國五鎊一先令六便士餘, 約吾國八十九元之譜. ¹⁹ Cost so much, 價格如此之貴. ²⁰ Crier, 叫喊者; 沿街叫賣者. ²¹ Well worth, 足值. ²² In the twinkle of an eye, 轉瞬之間; 即時; 立刻.

"I speak the truth,¹" said the crier, "and, to prove it to you, take² your seat on it with me, and I will wish us back in the inn you have just left." No³ sooner said than done. They sat on the carpet, and at once were in the room where the Prince lodged.⁴ The Prince gladly gave forty purses for the carpet, and it was now his. But as he needed⁵ no time for returning home, he remained⁶ in the town the rest of the year, enjoying⁷ its wonders. He was sure there could be no greater gift than the carpet.

Prince Ali, the second brother, made⁸ his way to Persia. When he reached the capital, he walked about the streets and heard the criers calling⁹ out their goods. There was one who had in his hand an ivory¹⁰ tube¹¹ about a foot¹² long and an inch¹³ thick. He cried out that he would sell this to any one for forty purses.

"This is a very simple¹⁴ tube," said the Prince. "Why do you ask such a high¹⁵ price for it? I see nothing wonderful about it."

"It is true," said the crier, "you can see nothing wonderful, and yet this tube is well worth forty purses; for if you own the tube you have but¹⁶ to look through it and you can see whatever you wish to see. Indeed, you may now try it, and see if¹⁷ I am not right."

¹ Truth, 實話. ² Take your seat, 坐; 請坐. ³ No sooner said than done, 語未畢而事已成 (謂語未畢而二人已坐於氈上也). ⁴ Lodged, 住宿. ⁵ Needed, 需. ⁶ Remained, 逗留. ⁷ Enjoying its wonders, 飽覽彼中奇事. ⁸ Made his way to, 向 . . . 而行; 往. ⁹ Calling out, 喊; 叫賣. ¹⁰ Ivory, 象牙. ¹¹ Tube, 管; 筒. ¹² Foot, 尺. ¹³ Inch, 寸. ¹⁴ Simple, 簡單; 樸素. ¹⁵ High price, 高價; 昂價. ¹⁶ But (作 only 解), 祇要; 僅須. ¹⁷ If I am not right = whether I am right or not.

So Prince Ali wished to see his father, the Sultan, and he looked through the tube and saw him on his throne, looking well and happy. Then he looked for the Princess, and saw her, too, laughing among her maids. At that he gladly paid his forty purses, for he was sure there could be no greater gift.

Now Prince Ahmed, the youngest, made his way to Arabia,¹ and as he walked through a bazaar² he heard a crier, with an apple in his hand, calling out that he would sell it for thirty-five purses.

"Thirty-five purses!" he said. "An apple for thirty-five purses? Why do you ask such a high price for it? I see nothing wonderful about it."

"It is true," said the crier, "you can see nothing wonderful, and yet this apple is well worth the price I ask. For it will cure any sick³ person, even if he is at⁴ the point of death. He has but to smell⁵ of it, and he will be made⁶ well at once."

"If that be so," said Prince Ahmed, "the apple is well worth the price. But how can I know if it really works⁷ this great cure?"

"Every one here knows it to be true," said the crier; and one⁸ after another came up and said he knew the apple would thus cure the sick. One man said he had a friend who lay⁹ very ill, and he was very sure the apple would make him well.

¹ Arabia (*á-rā/bí-á*), 亞刺伯國; 天方國(在亞細亞洲之西南). ² Bazaar 或作 bazar (*bá-zār*), 市場; 陳列百貨之所; 市集. ³ Sick, 病. ⁴ At the point of, 將近; 臨. ⁵ Smell, 嗅; 齧. ⁶ Made well, 復元; 瘳. ⁷ Works, 效; 成. ⁸ One after another, 一一(謂一人方去一人又來也). ⁹ Lay very ill, 病甚臥牀不起; 病甚沈重.

"Let us try it," said the Prince; "and if you prove what you say, I will give you forty purses for the apple." So they went to see the sick man, who smelled of the apple and was at once cured. Prince Ahmed made haste to buy the apple, for he was sure there could be no greater gift.

II

When the year drew¹ near its end, Prince Houssain got on his carpet, and wished himself back at the inn where he was to meet² his brothers, and in the twinkle of an eye he was there. Not long afterwards Prince Ali came, and last³ of all Prince Ahmed. They met one⁴ another joyfully,⁵ for each was sure he had the greatest gift.

"We shall have time enough to talk about our travels,⁶" said the eldest brother. "Let us at once show what we have brought. Do you see this plain⁷ carpet? Yet I paid forty purses for it, and it is worth it, for I came here from the seacoast on it in a moment of time. What can you show equal to this?"

Prince Ali said:

"Your carpet is truly wonderful. Yet see this simple tube. I paid forty purses for it. Look through it. You can see whatever you wish. Tell me if it is not worth more than your carpet." Prince Houssain took the tube and turned it toward the palace of the Sultan, and looked through it. At once he turned⁸ pale.

¹ Drew near its end, 將盡; 將終. drew (其後每有疏狀字如 near, away, back 等以副之), 行; 抵; 到. ² Meet, 會合; 與 . . . 相會. ³ Last of all, 最後. ⁴ One another, 彼此. ⁵ Joyfully, 歡樂. ⁶ Travels, 旅行中所遇之事. ⁷ Plain, 樸素; 平常. ⁸ Turned pale, 面無人色; 面色如土; 面如死灰.

"Alas, my brothers!" he said. "Of¹ what avail is it that we should bring our gifts? I see the Princess lying² on her bed, with all her maids about her, and she is about³ to die."

"Say you so?" said Prince Ahmed, and he looked through the tube also. "If we can but reach her in⁴ time I can save⁵ her by this apple. See! it looks like a common apple. Yet I paid forty purses for it, and it is well worth the price; for if one smells of it, no⁶ matter how sick one is, there will be an⁷ instant cure."

"Then let us get at once on my carpet," said Prince Houssain. "There is room⁸ for us all three, and we will wish ourselves in the Princess's room." This they did, and no sooner were they there amongst the weeping maids than Prince Ahmed held the apple to the face of the Princess. With her last⁹ breath she drew¹⁰ in the odor¹¹ of the apple. She opened her eyes and looked about her.

"Why do I lie here?" she asked, "and why are you weeping? I am perfectly well." The three Princes now left the room and came to the Sultan, their father. He was overjoyed to see them once¹² more, and they told their tales, and gave their gifts, and bade him say which of them should have the Princess. He took¹³ long to think it over, and then said:

"It is not possible¹⁴ to say with perfect justice.¹⁵ It is true, Ahmed, that you cured the Princess with your apple.

¹ Of what avail, 有何用; 有何益. ² Lying on her bed, 病臥在牀.
³ About, 將. ⁴ In time, 及時. ⁵ Save, 救. ⁶ No matter, 無論如何, 不論.
⁷ An instant cure, 立刻全愈; 立刻復元. ⁸ Room, 餘地; 空處.
⁹ Last breath, 最後之呼吸; 臨終時之呼吸. ¹⁰ Drew in, 吸入. ¹¹ Odor, 香氣; 氣味.
¹² Once more, 再. ¹³ Took long to think it over, 熟思; 思之良久. took long, 費時甚久. think . . . over, 想; 研究.
¹⁴ Possible, 能. ¹⁵ Justice, 正直; 公正.

But you could not have known she was sick if she had not been seen through Ali's tube; and you could not have reached her in time if you had not ridden on Houssain's carpet. It is true, Ali, that your tube showed you the Princess sick; but that would have done no good if you had not Houssain's carpet to ride on, and Ahmed's apple for her to smell of. It is true, Houssain, that your carpet brought all three here in time, but you would not have come at once before the Princess died if you had not seen her through Ali's tube; and if you had come, it would have done no¹ good if Ahmed had not brought his apple. No. You have all brought wonderful gifts, but it would not be right to² give the Princess to one more than to another. We must try another way."

So he bade them go out to the plain,³ each with a bow and an arrow; he who shot his arrow the farthest should have the Princess. They were followed⁴ by the Sultan and all the people, and the three brothers shot in⁵ turn. Houssain drew his bow and shot his arrow a great distance.⁶ Then Ali, seeing where that arrow had flown, pulled⁷ his bow with all his might,⁸ and his arrow flew still farther. Last came Ahmed, who drew his bow. Away sped⁹ the arrow, far, far away. They looked¹⁰ for it, but could not find it. And so, in¹¹ spite of all Ahmed could say, the Sultan gave the Princess to Ali, and there was a great wedding.¹²

¹ No good. 無益. ² To give the Princess to one more than to another. 將公主嫁此人, 而不以嫁他人. ³ Plain, 平地; 平原. ⁴ Followed, 跟隨; 伴. ⁵ In turn, 次第; 輪流. ⁶ Distance, 距離; 遠. ⁷ Pulled, 拉; 挽. ⁸ Might, 力; 腕力. ⁹ Sped, 疾去. ¹⁰ Looked for, 尋覓. ¹¹ In spite of (作 notwithstanding 解), 不管; 不掩; 不論. ¹² Wedding, 婚事; 喜事.

III

Prince Houssain would not stay to the wedding. He got on his carpet and went off to a far country, and sat¹ by himself and thought. Prince Ahmed, also, was too sad to stay at court. He left before the wedding, and, as he was very curious to know what had become of his arrow, he went in search of it.

He went to the spot² where he had shot his arrow, and then walked on and on; he looked on one side and the other, but he did not see it, but still went on. At last he came to a steep³ pile⁴ of rocks,⁵ and there, at the foot of the rocks, was the arrow. He was amazed.⁶ He knew he could not have shot so far, that no man could; but there it was.

As he stood in front of the rock he saw an iron⁷ door. He pushed⁸ it and it opened. With his arrow in his hand he pressed⁹ in. At first he stood in a dark¹⁰ cave.¹¹ Then it became very bright,¹² and he found himself in a great palace, and before him stood a lady¹³ with the air¹⁴ of a queen.¹⁵ She came forward and said:

“Welcome, Prince Ahmed. I have been waiting for you. I am a Peri,¹⁶ the daughter of one of the mightiest¹⁷ of the genies. I know all about you and your brothers, and the Princess whom you did not marry. It¹⁸ was I who caused the carpet to be made, and the tube, and the apple. I also

¹ Sat by himself and thought, 獨坐默思. ² Spot, 地點; 場所.
³ Steep, 峻; 峭. ⁴ Pile, 堆. ⁵ Rocks, 大石. ⁶ Amazed, 驚; 驚異.
⁷ Iron, 鐵. ⁸ Pushed, 推. ⁹ Pressed in, 擠入. ¹⁰ Dark, 黑; 暗.
¹¹ Cave, 穴. ¹² Bright, 明亮. ¹³ Lady, 上流婦人; 貴婦. ¹⁴ Air, 態度.
¹⁵ Queen, 皇后; 女主. ¹⁶ Peri (pē/ri), 譚仙人 (波斯神話中所用名稱). ¹⁷ Mightiest, 最有勢力. ¹⁸ It was I = I was the agent (主動者).
 (It is 二字置於稱代字之前者, 所以加重其語勢也).

caused your arrow to fly out of sight, for I wished to draw¹ you to this place. If you will live with me and be my husband, I will make you happy as long as you live.”

Prince Ahmed let himself be led through the palace. He saw all the wonders of the place. He saw the fairies² and genies who lived there, and he sat down at a great feast. Every day the Peri planned³ some surprise,⁴ some new and strange thing, and for six months Prince Ahmed lived happily with her.

IV

At the end of that time, Prince Ahmed had a great longing⁵ to go to his father; for he knew that his father must think him dead. So he told his wish to the Peri. She was in great fear lest⁶ he would go and never come back to her; and Prince Ahmed loved⁷ her dearly, and said he would not go at⁸ all if it troubled⁹ her.

Now the Sultan mourned¹⁰ the loss¹¹ of his son, Prince Ahmed. He sent his servants to every place, but they could not find him; and as time went on the Sultan grew more and more sad. At last a Wise¹² Woman was brought before him, and the Sultan asked her to find out if Ahmed were alive,¹³ and where he was.

“If you will give¹⁴ me time till to-morrow,” she said, “I think I can find out.” When the next day came she said: “Prince Ahmed is alive, but I cannot yet tell where he is;” and the Sultan could learn¹⁵ no more, but this was much.

¹ Draw, 引; 誘至; 牽引. ² Fairies, 精靈; 仙. ³ Planned, 設; 布置.
⁴ Surprise, 意料不及之事 (使人驟遇之而驚, 驚定而喜, 以爲笑樂也).
⁵ Longing, 渴望; 願望. ⁶ Lest, 恐; 恐防. ⁷ Loved dearly, 珍愛; 愛之甚摯.
⁸ At all, 無論如何. ⁹ Troubled, 使煩惱. ¹⁰ Mourned, 悲哀.
¹¹ Loss, 喪失 (意謂死也). ¹² Wise Woman, 女巫. ¹³ Alive, 生存; 活.
¹⁴ Give, 許; 准; 寬限. ¹⁵ Learn, 知悉.

Prince Ahmed said nothing more to the Peri of his wish to see his father; but she knew that he still wished to go, for he was sad, and often silent.¹ So one day she said to him:

“I know you still wish to see your father, but I know also that you are true to me and to² your word. You shall go, but let me tell you what you must³ and what you must not do. Do not tell your father where you have been all this time, nor tell him of me. Tell him only that you are happy, and that the sole⁴ reason for going back was to make him at ease in his mind.”

Prince Ahmed promised, and set off for the palace, riding a most splendid horse, and with twenty men on horses to ride with him. It was not very far to the Sultan's palace, and the Sultan was filled with great joy when he saw his son once more. True to his word, Prince Ahmed told nothing of what had happened to him, and on the third day he rode back to the Peri.

She received him gladly, and she was so sure now of his love⁵ for her that she said nothing about keeping⁶ him always by her. Rather,⁷ she sent him again to his father at the end of the month. Thus it went on, and Prince Ahmed again⁸ and again went to see his father, the Sultan; and his father forebore⁹ to ask him whence¹⁰ he came.

But the servants of the Sultan began to be jealous¹¹ of Prince Ahmed, and to fill¹² the ears of his father, the Sultan,

¹ Silent, 靜; 默然無言. ² To your word (即 true to your word), 有信; 能踐言; 不失約. ³ Must (即 must do 之省文). ⁴ Sole reason, 唯一之理由. ⁵ Love, 愛情. ⁶ Keeping, 保有; 留. ⁷ Rather (作 on the contrary 解), 反是. ⁸ Again and again, 屢次. ⁹ Forebore, 忍住. ¹⁰ Whence (作 from what place 解), 從何處; 自何方. ¹¹ Jealous, 嫉妒. ¹² Fill the ears of, 告; 稟; 屢次進言.

with warnings.¹ They said that he could not come from afar,² for his horses were always fresh,³ and that he must have great riches;⁴ and finally⁵ that it was clear⁶ he meant to get the kingdom away from the Sultan. The Sultan thanked his servants, but said he did not believe his son would act⁷ thus.

Still, he did begin to have some fear. So he sent again for the Wise Woman and bade her find out where his son went to. She learned by her art⁸ where Prince Ahmed found his arrow, and she also went to the foot of the rocks. There she hid⁹ herself and saw the Prince come with his men. Then she saw them no more, and she knew they must have gone through some fairy gate.

V

When it was time, a¹⁰ few days later, for the Prince to make another visit¹¹ to the Sultan, the Wise Woman had laid¹² a plan which she now carried¹³ out. She went again to the rocks and lay as if nearly dead. So when the Prince came out through the gate he saw a poor sick woman, not able to speak, and he was filled with pity. He bade his men place her on a horse, and then rode back through the gate into the palace of the Peri.

The Peri knew at once that all¹⁴ was not right, and warned¹⁵ the Prince that some one was trying to do him harm. But he said this could not be, for he knew he had

¹ Warnings, 警告. ² Afar, 遠; 遠方. ³ Fresh, 壯健; 不疲乏.
⁴ Riches, 富; 財帛. ⁵ Finally, 終; 最後. ⁶ Clear, 明白; 明確. ⁷ Act, 作爲; 行爲. ⁸ Art, 術 (謂巫術也). ⁹ Hid, 隱匿. ¹⁰ A few days later, 數日之後. ¹¹ Visit, 省視; 觀見. ¹² Laid a plan, 定計; 設法.
¹³ Carried out, 施行; 實行. ¹⁴ All was not right, 凡此皆非應有之事; 此事不妙; 此事不妥; 其中必有事故. ¹⁵ Warned, 警告.

wronged¹ no one; and so he set forth again to see his father, the Sultan. The Peri took² care of the woman,³ who soon revived⁴ and looked about her. She was amazed at the splendor⁵ of all she saw, and the Peri had her led through all the halls.

At last she was sent on her way through the fairy gate, but when she turned to see where it was, that she might find it again, it was not to be seen. So now she went back to the Sultan, and told him all she had found out. At the end of her tale she said: .

“You see, O Sultan, what great riches the Peri has. What⁶ if she should now urge⁷ your son to seize⁸ your throne and add⁹ the wealth¹⁰ you have to her own?”

The Sultan was much moved,¹¹ and called¹² on his councilors¹³ to advise¹⁴ him. They were for laying¹⁵ hold at once of the Prince and his men, and of clapping¹⁶ them into prison, even if they did not put them to death. The Wise Woman asked¹⁷ leave to be heard.

“Would that be best?” she asked. “The Prince’s men are genies. You cannot hold¹⁸ them. If they chose they could at once escape¹⁹ through the air to the Peri, and she would come and take your kingdom by²⁰ force. No. Rather set²¹ your son some great task.²² If he does it,

¹ Wronged, 苛待; 使受屈. ² Took care of, 看護. ³ Woman, 指女巫. ⁴ Revived, 復活; 甦醒. ⁵ Splendor, 光輝; 華麗. ⁶ What if = what will be the result if . . . , 若 . . . 則如何乎. ⁷ Urge, 力勸; 逼迫. ⁸ Seize, 取; 奪. ⁹ Add, 增加. ¹⁰ Wealth, 財產. ¹¹ Moved, 動心. ¹² Called on, 命. ¹³ Councilors, 國務員; 議政大臣. ¹⁴ Advise, 爲 . . . 策劃; 爲謀; 若以應如何辦理. ¹⁵ Laying hold at once of, 立即捕拿; 立即拿問. ¹⁶ Clapping, 急置; 急閉. ¹⁷ Asked leave to be heard, 請許彼有所陳說. ¹⁸ leave, 允許; 准許. ¹⁹ Hold, 捉拿; 捕. ²⁰ Escape, 逃. ²¹ By force, 用強暴手段; 以武力. ²² force, 暴力. ²¹ Set, 科以 . . . ; 任以 ²² Task, 難行之事.

well¹ and good, you will then have gained² something. If not, you will have a charge³ to bring⁴ against him.”

“What would you ask of him?” said the Sultan.

“Ask him to bring you a tent⁵ small enough to be carried in a man’s hand yet large enough to shelter⁶ your whole army.” They all agreed that this was a wise plan to follow,⁸ and the next day, when the Prince came to pay⁹ his respects, the Sultan said:

“My son, I have learned that you have married a Peri. It is only right that she should show her power¹⁰ for you, and that you should prove the honor you profess¹¹ for me. You see how much it costs¹² me whenever I go to war.¹³ I have to provide¹⁴ mules,¹⁵ camels,¹⁶ and other beasts¹⁷ of burden to carry the tents of the army. Now I am sure the Peri could easily give you for me a tent which a man could carry in his hand, but which would shelter my whole army. Ask her for it.” The Prince was much troubled¹⁸ at this.

“You are right,” said he, “when you say that I have married a Peri. How you found it out I do not know. And I dare not say if she will do this thing. But you are my father, and I obey your commands.¹⁹”

“Son,” said the Sultan, “your wife must have little²⁰ love for you if she is not willing to do so simple²¹ a thing. Go²² ask her.” The Prince was greatly vexed,²³ and he left

¹ Well and good, 甚善 (即“保無禍害”之意). ² Gained, 得; 獲. ³ Charge, 罪名. ⁴ Bring against, 責; 歸咎. ⁵ Tent, 天幕; 帳幕. ⁶ Shelter, 障蔽; 蔭蔽; 容納; 住. ⁷ Army, 陸軍. ⁸ Follow, 依從; 採用. ⁹ Pay his respects, 問候; 請安. ¹⁰ Power, 能力. ¹¹ Profess, 承認. ¹² Costs, 耗費. ¹³ War, 戰; 戰爭. ¹⁴ Provide, 備辦; 準備. ¹⁵ Mules, 驢. ¹⁶ Camels, 駱駝. ¹⁷ Beasts of burden, 負重之獸. ¹⁸ Troubled, 覺為難; 不知所以處之. ¹⁹ Commands, 命令. ²⁰ Little, 無多. ²¹ Simple, 簡便; 容易. ²² Go ask her = go and ask her, 去問彼索之. ²³ Vexed, 煩惱.

the court at once, though he had not stayed his usual¹ time. The Peri met him on his return, and saw that his face was sad. She asked him his trouble.²

"I do not know how it was found out," said he, "but the Sultan, my father, has learned of our marriage.³" The Peri had a ready⁴ answer to give him. She told him that the woman he had helped was a spy.⁵

"But there is something more," said she; "what is it?" Then he told her what his father had bid him ask of her. "Be at⁶ rest," she said smiling.⁷ "I will soon prove to your father my love to you." And so she called a maid and bade her bring the largest tent she had. The maid came back shortly⁸ with a small case⁹ in her hand, and the Peri gave this to the Prince.

He was puzzled.¹⁰ He had heard the order given for the largest tent, and here was nothing but a small case that might hold¹¹ a finger¹² ring. The Peri smiled.

"Do you think I jest¹³ with you?" she asked. "Go," said she to one of her servants, "and set up the tent." And then the tent was set up in a field, and the Prince saw that it was large enough to cover two armies such as his father had.

"You see," said the Peri, "that the tent is larger than you need. But you must know that it can be large or small, as you choose; and when it is set up for an army, it will be just¹⁴ right for that army."

¹ Usual, 通常; 照常. ² Trouble, 困難; 困苦. ³ Marriage, 婚姻; 結婚. ⁴ Ready answer, 敏捷之回答. ⁵ Spy, 探子; 偵探. ⁶ At rest, 安心. ⁷ Smiling, 微笑. ⁸ Shortly, 未幾; 俄頃. ⁹ Case, 匣; 盒子. ¹⁰ Puzzled, 迷惑. ¹¹ Hold, 容; 容納. ¹² Finger ring, 指環. ¹³ Jest, 戲謔; 戲弄. ¹⁴ Just right for, 恰合; 剛稱.

VI

So the tent was placed again in its little case, and the Prince rode off with it to the palace of his father, the Sultan. The Sultan wondered at so speedy¹ a return, and when he saw the tent, and it was set up, and it covered his whole army, his wonder knew² no bounds. But now he was filled³ with secret envy of his son; and the⁴ more he thought of it, the more he feared the power he had⁵ through the Peri.

The Sultan called the Wise Woman again, and she told him to ask for water from the Fountain⁶ of Lions. Now it was well known that this was a most perilous⁷ thing to do; and when the Prince heard the Sultan ask for water from the Fountain of Lions he was very angry. But he said again that he would lay⁸ the matter before the Peri. He did so in these words; after telling her of his father's pleasure⁹ over the tent:

"My father asks now an even greater gift. He asks for water from the Fountain of Lions. I have always done, when I could, what my father asked. But this shall be as¹⁰ you please, for he has no right¹¹ to ask such a gift from you."

"Be at rest," said the Peri. "I know who has put¹² this into your father's mind; but he shall not find¹³ fault with you or with me. The Fountain of Lions is in the middle

¹ Speedy, 捷速. ² Knew no bounds, 不知所止(謂其驚也). ³ Filled with secret envy, 滿腔懷一種不可明言之嫉忌; 心中暗嫉. secret, 私. envy, 嫉較. ⁴ The more . . . , the more . . . 愈 . . . , 愈

⁵ Had through the Peri, 由他女而得; 因他女而有. ⁶ Fountain of Lions, 獅子泉. ⁷ Perilous, 危險. ⁸ Lay the matter before, 將此事告知. ⁹ Pleasure over . . . , 見 . . . 之歡樂. ¹⁰ As you please, 任汝之便. ¹¹ Right, 權力. ¹² Put . . . into . . . mind, 教唆.

¹³ Find fault with, 非難; 責難.

of the court of a great castle.¹ Four fierce² lions guard the gate; two sleep while the other two are awake. I will show you how you can pass them safely.”

The Peri had a needle³ and thread⁴ in her hand as she spoke, and by her side lay other balls⁵ of thread. She gave one to the Prince and said:

“Take this ball of thread. Take also two horses. You will ride one and lead the other; the second is to carry a sheep killed to-day, and cut into four⁶ quarters. You must also take a bottle⁷ which I will give you. You will need it for the water you are to bring back.

“Set⁸ out early to-morrow. When you reach an iron gate throw the ball of thread before you, but hold the end of the thread. The ball will roll⁹ toward the castle. Follow it and you will come to the four lions. They will awake and roar.¹⁰ Throw a quarter of the sheep to each, then clap¹¹ spurs¹² to your horse and ride to the fountain. Fill your bottle with water and ride back. The lions will be busy eating and will not touch you.”

The Prince did as he was bid. He threw the ball; he reached the lions; they roared; he tossed¹³ a quarter of the sheep to each; he rode to the fountain and rode back with the water. But when he had passed the lions again, he saw that two of them left their food and began to follow him.

At first he drew¹⁴ his sword, for he thought he should have to fight¹⁵ for his life; but soon he saw they meant¹⁶ him

¹ Castle, 有深溝高墻可資守衛之巨宅. ² Fierce, 兇猛. ³ Needle, 針.
⁴ Thread, 線. ⁵ Balls of thread, 線團. ⁶ Four quarters, 四份; 平均四塊.
⁷ Bottle, 瓶. ⁸ Set out, 啓行; 動身. ⁹ Roll, 滾. ¹⁰ Roar, 吼.
¹¹ Clap, 驟擊. ¹² Spurs, 靴距 (刺馬鐵具, 騎者裝於靴踵, 以刺馬腹, 驅其進行者).
¹³ Tossed, 拋; 擲. ¹⁴ Drew his sword, 拔刀. ¹⁵ Fight for his life, 力圖以保生命. ¹⁶ Meant him no harm = meant to give him no harm, 對伊並無惡意.

no harm. One went before, the other followed behind, and so they came at last to the palace of the Sultan. Then the lions turned back and left the Prince, who went forward to his father.

"Here, sire," he said, as he bowed low, "is water from the Fountain of Lions. I wish you so much health that you never will need it." The Sultan was well pleased; then he said:

"Son, you have done well. I have but one thing more to ask of you and your fairy wife. I wish you to bring me a man not¹ above a foot and a half high, whose beard² is thirty feet long, who carries upon his shoulder³ a bar⁴ of iron weighing⁵ five hundred pounds,⁶ which he uses as a club,⁷ and who can speak."

VII

The Prince was in dismay.⁸ He knew not where such a creature could be found; but he went back to the Peri and told his tale.

"I know by⁹ this," he said, "that my father means to harm me forever.¹⁰"

"Be not cast¹¹ down," said she. "I know the man. He is my brother. He is very violent,¹² but he is also very kind to those who wish him well. Do not fear when you see him."

¹ Not above (作 not more than 解), 不過。 ² Beard, 鬚。 ³ Shoulder, 肩。 ⁴ Bar of iron, 鐵棒; 鐵棍。 ⁵ Weighing, 重。 ⁶ Pounds, 磅 (一磅約吾國十二兩餘)。 ⁷ Club, 棒; 棍。 ⁸ Dismay, 恐懼不克自振; 心神沮喪。 ⁹ By this, 因此; 由此觀之。 ¹⁰ Forever, 永遠; 常。 ¹¹ Cast down, 沮喪。 ¹² Violent, 兇暴。

At that she bade a servant make¹ a fire in a pan² on the porch³ of her palace. She took some incense and threw it into the fire. There was a thick cloud of smoke. When it cleared away the Peri's brother stood before them.

When the Prince looked on him, a⁴ chill ran down his back. The man was a foot and a half high; he had a beard thirty feet long, and he carried on his shoulder a club of iron five hundred pounds in weight.⁵ He looked fiercely at the Prince.

"Who is this man?" he asked.

"It is my husband," said the Peri. "He is Ahmed, son of the Sultan of India." Then the Peri's brother looked more kindly on him.

"His father, the Sultan," said the Peri, "has a great desire to see you, and, as a favor to us both, I wish you would let him take you to the palace."

"He need but lead the way; I will follow him."

So the next day Prince Ahmed took the Peri's brother to the palace. As they drew near, the people were so alarmed⁶ they fled⁷ into their houses, and the streets were empty. At the palace gates the guards, too, ran⁸ away, and so the two went in and there sat the Sultan on his throne with his councilors about him.

"Thou⁹ hast sent for me," said the Peri's brother, going straight up to the throne. "What dost¹⁰ thou wish?"

The Sultan did not dare speak. He put his hands before his eyes to shut out so fearful a sight.

¹ Make a fire, 生火; 發火. ² Pan, 鍋. ³ Porch, 廊; 廊廡. ⁴ A chill ran down his back, 覺背上一陣寒冷; 有如冷水澆背; 毛骨聳然. chill, 寒冷. back, 背脊. ⁵ Weight, 重量; 斤量. ⁶ Alarmed, 驚慌. ⁷ Fled, 逃避. ⁸ Ran away, 奔逃. ⁹ Thou hast = you have. ¹⁰ Dost thou = do you.

"Wilt¹ thou not speak?" asked the man in a rage; and, before Ahmed could stop him, he let his bar of iron fall on the Sultan's head and crushed² him to the earth. Then he slew³ all the enemies⁴ of Ahmed, and strode⁵ out into the court.

"There is one other," said he,—"the woman who stirred⁶ up the envy of the Sultan. Let her be brought."

When the woman was brought, he crushed her also to the earth.

"Learn," said he, "what it means to⁷ give wicked advice and to pretend⁸ sickness. Now," he went⁹ on, "let Prince Ahmed, my brother-in-law, be Sultan of India." Then all the people shouted:¹⁰

"Long¹¹ live Sultan Ahmed!" The Sultan's robes¹² were put upon him, and the little man at once sent for his sister and caused her to be crowned¹³ the Sultana of India.

Prince Ahmed gave to Prince Ali a great province¹⁴ to rule¹⁵ over. He sent also for Houssain, and told him he, too, should have a province. But Houssain sent¹⁶ back word he was quite content¹⁷ to live where he was. He wanted no province or riches: He wanted only to live in¹⁸ quiet.

¹ Wilt thou = will you. ² Crushed, 擊碎; 打爛. ³ Slew, 殺. ⁴ Enemies, 仇; 仇人. ⁵ Strode out, 大步而出. ⁶ Stirred up, 激起; 釀成. ⁷ To give wicked advice, 唆人作惡; 教人爲不善. ⁸ Advico, 告誡之語. ⁹ Pretend, 假作; 伴爲. ¹⁰ Went on, 繼續而言曰. ¹¹ Shouted, 呼喊; 歡呼. ¹² Long live Sultan Ahmed! 阿邁蘇丹萬歲. ¹³ Robes, 袍(謂御衣). ¹⁴ Crowned the Sultana, 立爲王后. ¹⁵ Crowned, 加冕; 立爲... ¹⁶ Province, 省. ¹⁷ Rule over, 治理. ¹⁸ Sent back word, 答; 回覆. ¹⁹ Content, 知足; 滿意. ²⁰ In quiet, 安靜.

V

THE HISTORY OF COGIA¹ HASSAN ALHABBAL

I

It was the habit² of Haroun³ Al Raschid, the Caliph⁴ of Bagdad,⁵ to go about his city in disguise, that he might learn the true condition⁶ of his people. On one occasion⁷ he was surprised at seeing a new building,⁸ fit for the palace of a great lord,⁹ in a street he had not passed through for a long time. At the Caliph's request¹⁰ the Grand Vizier found out, from one who lived near by, that the house belonged to one Cogia Hassan, surnamed¹¹ Alhabbal, on¹² account of his trade¹³ of rope¹⁴ making, at which the neighbor¹⁵ had seen him working when¹⁶ poor. By¹⁷ whatever means he had grown¹⁸ rich, he was certainly¹⁹ poor no²⁰ longer, for he lived²¹ in a manner befitting²² his palace.

¹ Cogia Hassan Alhabbal (kō/ji-ā hās/in āl-hāb/bāl), 人名。
² Habit, 習慣。 ³ Haroun Al Raschid 或作 Harun Al Raschid (hārōn/ āl rā/shīd), 人名。 ⁴ Caliph (kā/lif), 凱立夫 (穆罕默德 [Mohammed] 之承繼人; 回教國主習用之稱號。 ⁵ Bagdad (bāg-dād/), 巴達維德 (古回教國主之都, 在今亨土耳其)。 ⁶ Condition, 狀況; 情形。 ⁷ Occasion, 時; 時候。 ⁸ Building, 屋舍; 建築物。 ⁹ Lord, 貴人。 ¹⁰ Request, 請求 (作“吩咐”解)。 ¹¹ Surnamed, 姓; 外號。 ¹² On account of, 因; 因為。 ¹³ Trade, 業; 行業。 ¹⁴ Rope making, 打繩; 製繩。
¹⁵ Neighbor, 鄰人。 ¹⁶ When poor (即 when he was poor 之省文, 英文中類此者頗多, 學者當自加體會)。 ¹⁷ By whatever means, 以任何方法。 means, 方法; 手段。 ¹⁸ Grown (作 become 解), 成。 ¹⁹ Certainly, 一定; 無疑。 ²⁰ No longer, 非復; 不再。 ²¹ Lived, 過活; 度日 (指起居飲食等) ²² Befitting, 稱; 宜。

"I must see this fortunate¹ rope maker," said the Caliph, and on the next day the Grand Vizier brought him to the court, where he told his own story after² the following fashion:

Commander³ of the Faithful, my name is Hassan, but from my trade I am commonly⁴ known by the name of Hassan Alhabbal. I owe⁵ the good fortune I now enjoy to two dear friends, whose names are Saad⁶ and Saadi.⁷ Saadi is very rich, and always maintained⁸ that wealth⁹ was necessary to happiness, since¹⁰ without it no one could be independent.¹¹ Most poverty,¹² he said, came from a man's not having enough to begin¹³ with, and he thought that any man who made¹⁴ a right use even of small means¹⁵ would surely grow rich. Saad, on¹⁶ the other hand, contended¹⁷ that a poor man might gain wealth by other means, sometimes indeed by mere chance.¹⁸

"Well," said Saadi, "we will not dispute¹⁹ it any longer, but to test²⁰ our opinions²¹ I will give a sum of money to some honest²² but poor workman;²³ if he does not obtain wealth and ease with it, then you shall try if you can succeed²⁴ better by any means you may employ.²⁵"

¹ Fortunate, 有幸福; 運好. ² After the following fashion, 如下文; 如下. after, 照; 依. following, 以下. fashion, 式. ³ Commander of the Faithful, 信徒之督率者 (稱凱立夫之詞, 以凱立夫爲回教國之君長, 又代表穆罕默德爲回教之教主, 故有此稱). the Faithful, 信仰者 (指回教徒). ⁴ Commonly, 普通; 平常. ⁵ Owe . . . to, 得 . . . 因; 得 . . . 皆 . . . 之力. ⁶ Saad (sād), 人名. ⁷ Saadi (sā/dī), 人名. ⁸ Maintained, 以爲; 主張. ⁹ Wealth was necessary to happiness, 欲享幸福, 必先有財; 幸福必有資於財帛. ¹⁰ Since, 因; 因爲. ¹¹ Independent, 獨立; 自立; 不倚靠他人. ¹² Poverty, 貧乏; 窮苦. ¹³ Begin with, 開手 (即 "作資本" 之意). ¹⁴ Made a right use, 不誤用; 善用. ¹⁵ Means, 資財. ¹⁶ On the other hand, 反是. ¹⁷ Contended, 爭辯; 辯論. ¹⁸ Chance, 機會; 倖幸. ¹⁹ Dispute, 辯論; 爭論. ²⁰ Test, 試驗. ²¹ Opinions, 意見. ²² Honest, 誠實; 忠實. ²³ Workman, 工人; 作工之人; 手藝人. ²⁴ Succeed, 成就; 成功. ²⁵ Employ, 用.

Soon afterwards Saad and Saadi passed my house one day while I was at work at my rope making. They expressed¹ surprise that, with all my industry,² I could not do better and save³ some money. I told them that, work⁴ as I might, I could barely⁵ keep my family alive, to⁶ say nothing of buying materials⁷ for larger ventures.⁸ We talked a while longer and then Saadi pulled a purse⁹ out of his bosom¹⁰ and said:

“Here, take this purse; it contains¹¹ two hundred pieces¹² of gold. God bless¹³ you, and give you grace¹⁴ to make the good use of them I desire,¹⁵ and be sure my friend Saad and I will both have great pleasure if they help towards making you any more prosperous.¹⁶”

Commander of the Faithful, Hassan went on, my joy was so great that my¹⁷ speech failed me, and I could only thank my benefactor¹⁸ by laying hold of the hem¹⁹ of his garment²⁰ and kissing²¹ it; but he drew it from me hastily,²² and the two friends walked on.

I returned to my work thinking, How shall I keep this purse safe? for there is neither box nor cupboard²³ in my

¹ Expressed, 表露. ² Industry, 勤; 勤力. ³ Save, 省; 餘. ⁴ Work as I might (擬設支句之省文 [abbreviated conditional clause], 其意等於 working as I might [work], 或 however hard I might work), 無論如何勤苦 (參觀 Whitney's Essentials of English Grammar, § 494, p. 243; Sweet's New English Grammar, II, §2271, p. 106).
⁵ Barely, 僅. ⁶ To say nothing of, 更不必說. ⁷ Materials, 材料.
⁸ Ventures, 事業. ⁹ Purse, 錢袋; 錢囊. ¹⁰ Bosom, 胸; 胸前; 懷中.
¹¹ Contains, 內有. ¹² Pieces of gold, 金幣; 金圓. ¹³ Bless, 降福; 佑.
¹⁴ Grace, 恩. ¹⁵ Desire, 願望. ¹⁶ Prosperous, 富; 興隆. ¹⁷ My speech failed me, 口噤不能出語; 默不能言. speech, 語言 failed, 衰; 棄.
¹⁸ Benefactor, 施惠者; 恩人. ¹⁹ Hem, 衣緣; 衣邊. ²⁰ Garment, 衣服. ²¹ Kissing, 以吻接之. ²² Hastily, 急; 快; 匆忽. ²³ Cupboard (Füb/ärd), 廚.

poor house to lock¹ it up. It seemed best on² the whole to lay³ aside ten pieces for present⁴ use, and to wrap the rest in the folds⁵ of the lincn⁶ which went⁷ about my cap. Out of the ten pieces I bought a good stock⁸ of hemp,⁹ and, as my family had eaten no meat¹⁰ for a long time, got some for supper.¹¹

As I walked home, a famished¹² vulture¹³ flew upon me, and would have borne the meat away if I had not held it very fast; but in the struggle¹⁴ my turban¹⁵ fell on the ground. The vulture at once let¹⁶ go his hold on the meat, and, seizing my turban, flew away with it. I cried out so loud that all the men, women, and children near¹⁷ by joined¹⁸ me; but our cries had no effect¹⁹ on the vulture, and soon he and turban were both lost²⁰ to sight.

This made me very sad, and as I had to buy a new turban my ten pieces of gold did not last²¹ long. While they lasted, my little family and I lived better than usual, but when they were gone our poverty was as hopeless as ever. Yet I did not murmur²² or repine.²³ "God," said I, "was pleased to give me riches when I least²⁴ expected them. He has thought fit to take them away again. I will praise²⁵ His name for all the benefits²⁶ I have received,²⁷ and submit²⁸ myself, as ever, to His will.²⁹"

¹ Lock. . . up, 將 . . . 鎖放在內; 屬藏. ² On the whole, 自各方面觀之; 通盤籌算. ³ Lay aside, 留出; 放開; 另置一處. ⁴ Present, 現時; 目前. ⁵ Folds, 摺疊; 摺縫. ⁶ Lincn, 竹布. ⁷ Went about, 圍; 環繞; 包. ⁸ Stock, 貯以備用之貨. ⁹ Hemp, 大麻; 苧. ¹⁰ Meat, 肉. ¹¹ Supper, 晚餐; 夜飯. ¹² Famished, 飢餓. ¹³ Vulture, 鷹; 鷂. ¹⁴ Struggle, 力爭; 苦爭. ¹⁵ Turban, 纏頭之巾 (形如吾國舊時兵丁之包頭布). ¹⁶ Let go, 放; 放下. ¹⁷ Near by, 在近旁者. ¹⁸ Joined, 與 . . . 連合 (有“幫助”之意, 謂與之同聲叫喊也). ¹⁹ Effect, 效果; 效驗. ²⁰ Lost to sight, 目力所不及; 不見. ²¹ Last long, 經久; 耐久. ²² last, 存在. ²³ Murmur, 喃喃然口出怨言. ²⁴ Repine, 尤怨不已; 出怨言. ²⁵ Least expected, 最不希望; 毫不盼望. ²⁶ Praise, 讚揚. ²⁷ Benefits, 利益. ²⁸ Received, 得. ²⁹ Submit, 服從; 順從. ³⁰ Will, 意旨.

My poor wife did not bear the loss so calmly,¹ and when I told the neighbors that the vulture had carried away a hundred and ninety pieces of gold, besides² my turban, they did not believe a word of it, and only laughed.

About six months after this misfortune,³ the two friends came to me again. "Well,⁴" said Saad, "we do not ask you how affairs go⁵ since⁶ we saw you last;⁷ without doubt⁸ they are better."

"Gentlemen,⁹" I answered, "I deeply grieve to tell you that your good¹⁰ wishes and my hopes have not had the success¹¹ we expected."

Then I told them exactly¹² what had happened, scarcely¹³ thinking they would believe it. Nor did they at first, but they knew me for an honest man, and Saad recalled¹⁴ other strange true stories of vultures, so that Saadi himself seemed almost convinced.¹⁵ Bidding me be more careful in future, he pulled a purse out of his waistband,¹⁶ and counted¹⁷ out into my hand two hundred pieces of gold, which I put into my bosom for want¹⁸ of a purse. Before I could half express my thanks for this second kindness the two friends walked away.

I did not take up my work again that day, but hastened¹⁹ home. Finding neither wife nor children within, I pulled out my money, put ten pieces on one side for present use,

¹ Calmly, 安靜. ² Besides, 外加; 除 . . . 外. ³ Misfortune, 不幸之事. ⁴ Well (語助詞, 英文中每置於一語之前, 以引起下文; 例如 Well, let me go. Well, I must see him to-day). ⁵ Go, 進行. ⁶ Since, 在 . . . 之後. ⁷ Last, 末次; 上次. ⁸ Doubt, 疑. ⁹ Gentlemen, 先生. ¹⁰ Good wishes, 好意; 盛意. ¹¹ Success, 好結果; 成效. ¹² Exactly, 的確; 詳細; 一無舛誤; 毫不隱飾. ¹³ Scarcely, 幾乎不. ¹⁴ Recalled, 想起; 回憶. ¹⁵ Convinced, 信. ¹⁶ Waistband, 腰帶. ¹⁷ Counted, 數. ¹⁸ Want, 缺乏. ¹⁹ Hastened, 趕快; 疾趨.

and wrapped up the rest in a clean¹ linen cloth, tying² it fast with a knot,³ and placing it for safety in an earthen⁴ vessel full of bran⁵ which stood⁶ in a corner. Into this I thought no one would look; and when my wife came in soon afterwards I went out to buy some hemp, without saying anything to her about this second gift from Saadi.

While I was absent⁷ a sandman,⁸ who sells washing balls which women use in the baths,⁹ passed through our street. My wife, who had no money, asked him if he would exchange¹¹ his washing balls for some bran. The sandman consented, and the bargain was made.

I soon came home with my hemp, and saw at once that the pot¹² of bran was gone. I asked my wife, in great fear, what¹³ had become of it, and she told me of her bargain with the sandman.

"Ah, unfortunate woman!" I cried, "you know not what you have done. With the bran, you have given the sandman a hundred and ninety pieces of gold, a second gift from Saadi."

At this my wife became like one distracted,¹⁴ beating¹⁵ her breast and tearing¹⁶ her hair and clothes. "Where shall I find the sandman?" she cried; "O husband, why did you not tell me in time?"

¹ Clean, 清潔. ² Tying, 縛. ³ Knot, 結. ⁴ Earthen vessel, 瓦罐. ⁵ Bran, 糠. ⁶ Stood in a corner, 置於屋之一隅. ⁷ Absent, 不在 (謂不在家也). ⁸ Sandman, 製皂者; 賣胰皂者. ⁹ Washing balls, 製皂丸; 胰皂. ¹⁰ Baths, 洗澡; 沐浴; 澡堂; 浴場. ¹¹ Exchange, 換; 交易. ¹² Pot, 罐. ¹³ What had become of it, 此罐作何結局; 此罐何在. ¹⁴ Distracted, 眼花; 有心疾. ¹⁵ Beating her breast, 捶心; beating, 打擊. ¹⁶ Tearing, 撕; 毀壞.

“We must bear our loss patiently,¹” I said. “After² all, what³ have the rich which we have not? We breathe⁴ the same air, and are⁵ warmed by the same sun. They die as⁶ well as we. In⁷ short, while we live⁸ in the fear of God, there is no advantage⁹ which we ought to covet.¹⁰”

Thus we comforted¹¹ ourselves, and I worked on at my trade as if nothing had happened, only I dreaded¹² to look¹³ Saadi in the face when he should come and ask me how I had improved¹⁴ his two hundred pieces of gold.

II

After some time, Saad and Saadi again called¹⁵ to see how I had prospered.¹⁶ Each still held his first opinion about the best way of helping me. I made¹⁷ believe that I did not see them, and never lifted up my eyes until they spoke. Then I told them with shame¹⁸ of my second misfortune. “Could I guess¹⁹ that a sandman would come by that very day,” I said, “and that my wife would give him our pot of bran? Perhaps I should have been more prudent,²⁰ but ah,²¹ sir,” I added²² as I turned to Saadi, “I see that it has pleased God that I should not be enriched²³ at your hand, but that I must remain²⁴ poor. Yet I owe²⁵ you as many thanks as if I had gained great wealth.”

¹ Patiently, 忍耐. ² After all, 終究; 到底. ³ What have the rich which we have not, 富人所有者, 吾輩亦何嘗無之. ⁴ Breathe, 呼吸. ⁵ Are warmed, 爲 . . . 所煦育. ⁶ As well as, 與 . . . 相同. ⁷ In short, 簡言之; 總而言之. ⁸ Live in the fear of God, 居常畏敬上帝. ⁹ Advantage, 利; 利益. ¹⁰ Covet, 欲望; 貪求. ¹¹ Comforted, 安慰. ¹² Dreaded, 怕; 懼. ¹³ Look . . . in the face, 正視. ¹⁴ Improved, 增加. ¹⁵ Called, 過訪; 來. ¹⁶ Prospered, 得意; 發財. ¹⁷ Made believe, 佯作; 假裝. ¹⁸ Shame, 羞慚; 慚愧. ¹⁹ Guess, 猜度; 料及. ²⁰ Prudent, 謹慎; 小心; 仔細. ²¹ Ah, 已矣(此嘆語, 表示安心任命之意). ²² Added, 繼續而言曰. ²³ Enriched = made rich, 因 . . . 致富. ²⁴ Remain, 依舊; 賸落. ²⁵ Owe . . . thanks, 知感. owe, 欠; 應當酬謝.

"I do not regret¹ the four hundred pieces of gold," answered Saadi. "I gave them in duty² to God, and for³ the sake of testing my opinion. Now Saad," he said to his friend, "you may try your way, and see if something besides money will make a poor man rich. Let Hassan be the man."

Saad had a piece of lead in his hand which he showed Saadi. "You saw me," said he, "take up this piece of lead, which I found on the ground; I will give it to Hassan, and you shall see what it comes to be worth."

Saadi burst⁴ out laughing. "What is that bit⁵ of lead worth?" said he; "a farthing!⁶ What can Hassan do with that?"

"Take it, Hassan," said Saad; "let Saadi laugh; you will tell us some news⁷ of the good⁸ luck it has brought you one⁹ time or another."

I thought him in jest,¹⁰ but took the lead and thanked him, and the two friends walked away.

That night, when I pulled off my clothes, the piece of lead, of which I had not thought again, tumbled¹¹ out of my pocket.¹² I took it up, and laid it on the place nearest me. That same night it happened that a fisherman who lived hard¹³ by was mending¹⁴ his nets and found a piece of lead wanting.¹⁵ It was too late to buy any, and if he did not fish that night his family must go¹⁶ hungry the next

¹ Regret, 懊悔. ² Duty, 敬; 順從. ³ For the sake of, 因; 因欲.
⁴ Burst out laughing, 譁然大笑; 不禁大笑. burst out, 突發. ⁵ Bit, 一小塊; 一小片. ⁶ Farthing (far/thing), 小錢(英國最小之幣, 值四分之一辨士, 等於美幣半分, 如中國之銅圓也). ⁷ News, 消息. ⁸ Good luck, 佳運. ⁹ One time or another, 遲早; 將來. ¹⁰ Jest, 戲言.
¹¹ Tumbled out, 落出. ¹² Pocket, 衣袋. ¹³ Hard by (作 near by 解), 近. ¹⁴ Mending, 修補. ¹⁵ Wanting, 缺少; 遺失; 失落. ¹⁶ Go hungry, 受饑.

day. Therefore he called his wife, and bade her ask among the neighbors for a piece of lead. When she had been¹ to every door but² ours, she told her husband that none was to be had. "There is no use of going to Hassan's house," she said; "they never have anything when one wants it."

"No³ matter," said the fisherman, "you must go there. This may be the lucky⁴ time."

We were roused⁵ by her knocking,⁶ and when I heard what she wanted, I told my wife just where I had put the piece of lead Saad had given me. Groping⁷ about in the dark she found it, and handed⁸ it out to the fisherman's wife, who was so delighted⁹ that she promised¹⁰ us at once the first cast¹¹ of her husband's nets, whatever¹² it might prove to be.

The fisherman was so pleased to get the lead that he made¹³ the promise good by coming to me the next day with a fish about a yard¹⁴ long, and thick in¹⁵ proportion.

"Neighbor," he said, "it pleased God to send me no more than this one fish for you. Such as it is, I desire you to accept¹⁶ it. Had¹⁷ He sent me my net full, as He did in other casts, they should all have been yours."

"Neighbor," I answered, "the bit of lead was such a trifle¹⁸ that it should not be valued¹⁹ at so high a rate.²⁰

¹ Been to = gone to. ² But (作 except 解), 除 . . . 之外. ³ No matter, 不妨. ⁴ Lucky, 有幸; 吉利. ⁵ Roused, 喚起; 喚醒; 驚醒. ⁶ Knocking, 叩門之聲. ⁷ Groping about in the dark, 暗中摸索. ⁸ Handed . . . to, 交; 給. ⁹ Delighted, 快樂. ¹⁰ Promised us = promised to give us. ¹¹ Cast, 擲 (謂撒網也, 指一網所得之物). ¹² Whatever it might prove to be, 無論所得爲何物. ¹³ Made the promise good, 踐約; 踐其前言. made good, 踐; 成. ¹⁴ Yard, 碼 (一碼約吾國二尺半). ¹⁵ In proportion, 與 . . . 相稱. ¹⁶ Accept, 收納; 收受. ¹⁷ Had He sent . . . = if He had sent (句中 He 字之 H 用大寫, 指 God 故也). ¹⁸ Trifle, 微物; 不值錢之物. ¹⁹ Valued, 估價; 計值. ²⁰ Rate, 率; 價格.

Neighbors should help each other in their little wants. You would have done the same for me. Yet, since you offer¹ the fish so freely,² I take it and return you my hearty³ thanks."

When I took it home my wife thought it too big either to broil⁴ or to boil,⁵ with our small gridiron⁶ and pot; but I told her I should like it cooked⁷ in any way, and returned to my work.

In cleaning⁸ the fish, my wife found a hard, clear substance⁹ which she took¹⁰ for a piece of glass.¹¹ She gave it to our youngest child for a plaything,¹² and his brothers and sisters handed¹³ it about, admiring¹⁴ its brightness¹⁵ and beauty. At night, when the lamp was lighted, the children saw that it gave¹⁶ out a light when their mother stood between the lamp and them; and the younger children cried because the elder would not let them have it all the time to play with in the dark.

Upon hearing the cause¹⁷ of their dispute when I came home, I called¹⁸ for the piece of glass, and bade my wife put out the lamp, when we found that the glass gave out so bright a light that we could see to go to bed by it. I placed it on the chimney¹⁹ and said: "Look! this is the great advantage that Saad's bit of lead brings us; it will spare²⁰ us the expense²¹ of oil."²²

¹ Offer, 給; 贈. ² Freely, 慷慨. ³ Hearty, 真心; 誠懇. ⁴ Broil, 炙. ⁵ Boil, 煮. ⁶ Gridiron (grid/i-urn), 鐵排; 燻魚肉之鐵架. ⁷ Cooked, 烹調. ⁸ Cleaning, 洗滌. ⁹ Substance, 物. ¹⁰ Took for, 誤爲; 想是; 當作. ¹¹ Glass, 玻璃. ¹² Plaything, 玩具. ¹³ Handed . . . about, 互相授受. ¹⁴ Admiring, 悅; 愛. ¹⁵ Brightness, 明亮. ¹⁶ Gave out, 發; 發射. ¹⁷ Cause, 原因. ¹⁸ Called for, 索取. ¹⁹ Chimney, 煙罩. ²⁰ Spare, 省. ²¹ Expense, 費; 費用. ²² Oil, 油; 燈油.

When the children saw that the lamp was out¹ and the piece of glass supplied² its place, they made so great a noise³ in their surprise that it alarmed⁴ the neighborhood.⁵

Now there was but a very thin wall between my house and that of my next neighbor, who was a very rich Jew⁶ and a jeweler;⁷ and the chamber⁸ in which he and his wife slept was next to ours. The noise my children made awakened them.

In the morning the jeweler's wife came to mine, and complained⁹ of being disturbed¹⁰ in the first¹¹ sleep. "Good neighbor Rachel,¹²" said my wife, "I am very sorry; but you know the children will laugh and cry for¹³ a trifle. See here! it was this piece of glass, which I took out of a fish, that caused¹⁴ all the noise."

"Indeed," said the jeweler's wife, "I believe, as you do, it is a piece of glass; but I will buy it if you will sell it."

Here the children broke¹⁵ in, crying and begging that their mother would not part¹⁶ with their plaything, and, to quiet¹⁷ them, she promised she would not. But as the Jewess¹⁸ went out, she asked my wife in a whisper¹⁹ to sell it to nobody without first letting her know. Then she hurried²⁰ to her husband's shop to tell him what she had seen, and on her way home came in to ask my wife privately²¹ if she would take twenty pieces of gold for the piece of glass.

¹ Out, 滅; 熄. ² Supplied, 補充; 代. ³ Noise, 大聲; 喧嘩. ⁴ Alarmed, 驚動. ⁵ Neighborhood, 鄰近之人. ⁶ Jew, 猶太人. ⁷ Jeweler, 珠寶商. ⁸ Chamber, 房; 室. ⁹ Complained of, 出怨言; 訴. ¹⁰ Disturbed, 擾; 驚動. ¹¹ First sleep, 第一次睡着之時. ¹² Rachel (rā/chēl), 人名. ¹³ For a trifle, 因無關緊要之小事. ¹⁴ Caused, 使 . . . 發生. ¹⁵ Broke in, 突然闖入; 闖入. ¹⁶ Part with, 與 . . . 分離; 賣. ¹⁷ Quiet, 安穩; 使安靜. ¹⁸ Jewess, 猶太女人. ¹⁹ Whisper, 低語; 耳語; 私語. ²⁰ Hurried, 急往; 遂去. ²¹ Privately, 私; 密.

This seemed so great a sum¹ to my wife that she said she would do nothing with the glass till she had spoken to me about it. Just then I came home for my dinner,² and my wife stopped me at the door to ask if I would take twenty pieces of gold, offered by our neighbor, for the piece of glass. I made no answer, but called³ to mind the confidence⁴ with which Saad had said that the bit of lead would make my fortune.⁵ The Jewess, thinking I was silent because the price was too low, said: "I will give you fifty, neighbor, if that will do."

So soon as I saw how eager⁶ she was, I told her that I expected a⁷ great deal more. "Well, neighbor," said she, "I will give you a hundred, and that is so much that I know not whether my husband will approve⁸ my offering it."

Then I told her plainly⁹ I would have a¹⁰ hundred thousand pieces of gold for it; that I saw plainly that the diamond¹¹—for such I now guessed it to be—was worth a great deal more; but, to oblige¹² her and her husband as neighbors, I would limit¹³ myself to that price; and if they refused to give it, other jewelers would give much more.

By several biddings¹⁴ she came¹⁵ up to fifty¹⁶ thousand pieces of gold, and when the Jew came home at night, he went¹⁷ still higher, haggling¹⁸ at every advance, but paying me in the end the one hundred thousand pieces which I demanded.¹⁹

¹ Sum, 數; 款. ² Dinner, 中飯; 午餐. ³ Called to mind, 記起; 回憶. ⁴ Confidence, 信心; 信任. ⁵ Fortune, 鉅富. ⁶ Eager, 懇切. ⁷ A great deal=very much. ⁸ Approve, 承諾; 認可. ⁹ Plainly, 明白. ¹⁰ A hundred thousand, 十萬. ¹¹ Diamond, 金剛石; 鑽石. ¹² Oblige, 加惠; 體恤; 見好. ¹³ Limit, 限制; 限定; 以爲限. ¹⁴ Biddings, 還價. ¹⁵ Came up, 加至. ¹⁶ Fifty thousand, 五萬. ¹⁷ Went, 進行 (謂加價). ¹⁸ Haggling at every advance, 每次加價, 必有爭論; 每加價一次, 必爭一次. haggling, 爭論價值. advance, 進步 (作“加添”解). ¹⁹ Demanded, 要求; 索.

Having thus sold my diamond, I was rich beyond¹ my fondest hopes, and thanked God for his bounty.² If I had known where Saad and Saadi lived, I would have gone and thrown myself at their feet in gratitude,³ for each had intended⁴ an equal kindness.

Then I thought of the use to which I should put⁵ my great wealth. My wife was for buying rich clothes,⁶ house, and furniture;⁶ but my plan was different. I began at once going to the people of my own trade who worked as hard as I had done, and giving them money in⁷ advance to work for me at all sorts⁸ of rope making. By this means I secured⁹ almost all the business¹⁰ in Bagdad, and every one was pleased with my exactness¹¹ and prompt¹² payment. Soon I had to hire¹³ warehouses¹⁴ in several parts of the town to hold my goods. With¹⁵ clerks over each, selling¹⁶ at wholesale and retail, the profits¹⁷ became large; and, to bring¹⁸ my business together, I built the house you saw yesterday. Though it makes so great a show,¹⁹ it consists,²⁰ for²¹ the most part, of warehouses for my business, with rooms for myself and family.²²

¹ Beyond my fondest hopes, 出乎我最大希望之外; 爲我所夢想不到。 fondest, 最所願者 (以狀希望, 謂任意想之所之, 不加拘束, 惟恐其不造乎其極, 故云最大之希望)。 ² Bounty, 厚賜。 ³ Gratitude, 感謝 (此字與 thank 不同; thank 現於外者也, gratitude, 存於心者也; 詳見英語歧字辨異)。 ⁴ Intended, 懷; 存 . . . 之心。 ⁵ Put, 處置; 使用。 ⁶ Furnitura, 器具; 家具。 ⁷ In advance, 預先。 ⁸ Sorts, 種; 類。 ⁹ Secured, 得; 獲得。 ¹⁰ Business, 生意。 ¹¹ Exactness, 認真; 不失期。 ¹² Prompt, 迅速。 ¹³ Hire, 租; 賃。 ¹⁴ Warehouses, 貨棧。 ¹⁵ With clerks over each, 每棧以夥友管理之。 clerk, 司帳者; 夥友。 ¹⁶ Selling at wholesale and retail, 或批發或零售。 ¹⁷ Profits, 利益。 ¹⁸ Bring . . . together, 合在一處。 ¹⁹ Show, 鋪張。 ²⁰ Consists . . . of, 包容。 ²¹ For the most part, 大半; 大部分。 ²² Family, 家; 家人; 家眷。

III

Some time after I had removed¹ to this house, Saad and Saadi called² on me in my former place, where they learned, to their surprise, that I was become a great man of business, no longer plain³ Hassan, but Cogia⁴ Hassan Alhabbal. They set out at once to visit me in my new abode.⁵ When I saw them coming I ran to meet them, and would have kissed the hem of their garments; but they would not allow⁶ it, and embraced⁷ me. Yet I protested⁸ that I had not forgotten⁹ the respect¹⁰ that was their due,¹¹ or how much I owed them; and begged them to sit down in the place¹² of honor, and seated myself opposite¹³ to them.

Then Saadi said to me: "Cogia Hassan, I cannot express my joy to see you. I am sure that those four hundred pieces I gave you have made this great change¹⁴ in your fortune.¹⁵"

Saad could not at all agree and said: "Saadi, I am vexed that you still think the two accidents¹⁶ of which Hassan has told us did not befall him. Let him speak¹⁷ for himself, and say to which of us he owes most of his present good fortune."

"Gentlemen," said I, "I will relate¹⁸ to you the whole matter¹⁹ with the same truth as before." I then told them the²⁰ very history which I have now related to you, Commander of the Faithful.

¹ Removed, 遷移; 移入. ² Called on, 訪; 拜會. ³ Plain, 平常; 尋常.
⁴ Cogia (kō/ji-ā) (作 master 或 lord 解), 老爺. ⁵ Abode, 住宅.
⁶ Allow, 准; 許. ⁷ Embraced, 擁持 (所以示親愛也). ⁸ Protested, 明言; 直陳. ⁹ Forgotten, 忘記; 遺忘. ¹⁰ Respect, 敬禮. ¹¹ Due, 應有之物; 理所應得之物; 理應享受者. ¹² Place of honor, 尊位; 上座.
¹³ Opposite to, 對; 在對面. ¹⁴ Change, 更. ¹⁵ Fortune, 命運 (指財產言). ¹⁶ Accidents, 意外之事; 不能預料之事. ¹⁷ Speak for himself, 自言之. ¹⁸ Relate, 講; 述. ¹⁹ Matter, 事; 事情. ²⁰ The very history, 實事; 實在情形.

Saadi could no more believe the story of the didmond and the fish than what I told him of the vulture and the sandman. "But," said he, "I am sure that now you are rich, as I intended you should be by my means; and I rejoice¹ sincerely."²

When they rose to go, I said: "There is one favor I have to ask: I beg of you to stay with me to-night, and to-morrow I will carry you by³ water to a small country house which I have bought, and we will return in the evening."

This they consented to do, and the evening passed most pleasantly,⁴ with supper and music and talk⁵ about my house and business and good fortune. I held⁶ them alike in my esteem, for without Saadi, Saad would never have given me the piece of lead; and without Saad, Saadi would not have given me the four hundred pieces of gold.

The next morning, very early, we were rowed⁷ by six rowers,⁸ in a pleasure⁹ boat well carpeted,¹⁰ to my country house. The friends could not say enough for the beauty of my gardens, and grove¹¹ of orange and lemon¹² trees. The fragrant¹³ air was full of the music¹⁴ of birds, and Saad and Saadi frequently¹⁵ stopped to thank me for bringing them to so beautiful a place.

At the end of the grove I pointed out a wood¹⁶ of large trees. Into this, two of my boys, whom I had sent into the country for the¹⁷ air, had just gone with a tutor¹⁸ and a

¹ Rejoice, 喜; 樂. ² Sincerely, 衷心; 誠意. ³ By water, 由水路.
⁴ Pleasantly, 歡樂. ⁵ Talk, 談話; 閒談. ⁶ Held them alike in my esteem, 一視敬禮; 對於二人之敬意, 初無二致. held . . . in esteem, 尊敬. alike, 均; 同一. ⁷ Rowed, 駕舟; 划槳. ⁸ Rowers, 榜人; 船夫.
⁹ Pleasure boat, 遊艇. ¹⁰ Carpeted, 敷以地毯. ¹¹ Grove, 小林; 樹叢.
¹² Lemon, 檸檬. ¹³ Fragrant, 香; 芬芳. ¹⁴ Music of birds, 鳥聲(曰 music 者, 言其如樂之和也). ¹⁵ Frequently, 時時; 屢次. ¹⁶ Wood, 樹林.
¹⁷ The air = the pure air, 新空氣; 清潔之空氣. ¹⁸ Tutor, 師傅.

slave.¹ Seeing a nest² in the branches of a lofty³ tree, they bade the slave climb⁴ for it. On reaching it he was greatly surprised to find it made of a turban, which he brought down, and, thinking I might like to see so strange a nest, sent it to me by the elder boy.

The two friends and I wondered at the nest, I most⁵ of all, because I recognized⁶ the turban as the one with which the vulture had flown away. After I had examined⁷ it well, and turned it about, I said to my guests:

"Gentlemen, do you remember⁸ the turban I wore on the day you did me the honor first to speak to me?"

"I do not think," said Saad, "that either of us noticed⁹ it; but if the hundred and ninety pieces of gold are in it, there can be no doubt."

"Sir, this is the very turban," I answered; and, taking the young birds out of the nest, I bade them look closely while I unwrapped it. Soon I took out the purse which Saadi knew to be the one he had given me. I emptied¹⁰ it before them and said: "There, gentlemen, there is the money; count it and see if it be right;" which Saad did, and found it to be a hundred and ninety pieces of gold.

Saadi could no longer deny¹¹ a truth which was so plain,¹² and said to me: "I agree, Cogia Hassan, that this money could not serve¹³ to enrich you; but what about the other hundred and ninety pieces, which you would make me believe you hid in a pot of bran?"

"Sir," I answered, "I have told you the truth in regard to both sums, and I shall hope yet to prove it to you."

¹ Slave, 奴; 奴隸. ² Nest, 巢; 鳥窠. ³ Lofty, 高. ⁴ Climb for it, 登樹取之. ⁵ Most of all, 最甚; 更甚. ⁶ Recognized, 認識. ⁷ Examined, 細看. ⁸ Remember, 記憶. ⁹ Noticed, 注意; 留心. ¹⁰ Emptied, 傾出. ¹¹ Deny, 否認. ¹² Plain, 明白. ¹³ Serve, 用以; 足以.

We stayed in the country till sunset,¹ and after a ride² of two hours reached Bagdad by moonlight.³ It happened through the fault⁴ of my grooms⁵ that we were then out⁶ of grain for our horses, and the storehouses⁷ were all shut.⁸ A slave was sent out to find what he could in the shops, and soon returned with a pot of bran. In emptying it he found a linen cloth tied up, and very heavy. This he brought to me just as it was found. I saw at once what it was, and said to my two friends:

“Gentlemen, it has pleased God that you should not part⁹ from me without knowing that I have told the truth. Here are the other hundred and ninety pieces of gold.”

Then I counted out the money before them and called my wife, who declared¹⁰ the pot to be none¹¹ other than the one she had given the sandman.

Saadi could doubt no longer, and, turning to his friend, said: “I yield¹² to you, Saad, and admit¹³ that money is not always the means of becoming rich.”

When Saadi had spoken, I said to him: “I dare not propose to return to you the three hundred and eighty pieces of gold, since I know that you gave them without a thought of return; but if you approve, I will give them to-morrow to the poor, that God may bless us both.”

The two friends lay¹⁴ at my house that night also. When we parted the next day, I regarded¹⁵ their permission¹⁶ to continue¹⁷ in their friendship,¹⁸ and to visit them, as a great honor.

¹ Sunset, 日落; 黃昏. ² Ride, 乘車. ³ Moonlight, 月光. ⁴ Fault, 錯誤; 怠惰. ⁵ Grooms, 馬夫. ⁶ Out of grain, 缺乏穀料. grain, 穀物 (以此喂馬). ⁷ Storehouses, 貨棧; 糧食店. ⁸ Shut, 閉; 閉門. ⁹ Part from, 離; 別. ¹⁰ Declared, 說; 謂. ¹¹ None other than, 即是; 即係. ¹² Yield to, 讓步; 服. ¹³ Admit, 認其爲是; 承認. ¹⁴ Lay, 睡; 宿. ¹⁵ Regarded, 以爲. ¹⁶ Permission, 允許. ¹⁷ Continue, 繼續. ¹⁸ Friendship, 交好; 友誼; 交情.

The Caliph, at the conclusion of this story, said: "Cogia Hassan, I have not for a long time heard anything that has given me so much pleasure. Thou¹ oughtest constantly² to return³ thanks to God, and to use well his blessings.⁴ The same diamond which made thy⁵ fortune is now in my treasury,⁶ and I am happy to learn how it came there. Because there may remain in Saadi some doubts about the singular⁷ beauty of this diamond, which I esteem⁸ as my most precious⁹ jewel,¹⁰ I would have you carry him and Saad to my treasurer,¹¹ who will show it to them."

Then Cogia Hassan prostrated¹² himself at the throne and retired.¹³

¹ Thou oughtest = you ought. ² Constantly, 常. ³ Return thanks, 答以謝忱. ⁴ Blessings, 恩賜. ⁵ Thy = your. ⁶ Treasury, 庫. ⁷ Singular, 罕有; 難得. ⁸ Esteem, 意爲; 估度. ⁹ Precious, 貴重; 寶貴. ¹⁰ Jewel, 珍寶. ¹¹ Treasurer, 司庫者; 掌庫者. ¹² Prostrated, 俯伏; 跪下. ¹³ Retired, 退.

VI

THE STORY OF ALADDIN;¹ OR THE WONDERFUL LAMP

I

IN one of the large and rich cities of China² there once lived a tailor³ named Mustapha.⁴ He was so poor that by the hardest daily labor he could barely support⁵ himself and his family, which consisted only of his wife and a son.

This son, Aladdin, was a very careless,⁶ idle,⁷ and disobedient⁸ fellow.⁹ He would leave home early in the morning and play all¹⁰ day in the streets and public¹¹ places. When he was old enough, his father tried to teach him the tailor's trade, but Mustapha no sooner turned his back than the boy was gone for¹² the day. He was frequently punished,¹³ but in¹⁴ vain; and at last the father gave¹⁵ him up as a hopeless idler,¹⁶ and in a few months died¹⁷ of the grief Aladdin caused him.

The boy, now free¹⁸ from restraint, became worse than ever. Until he was fifteen, he spent all his time with idle

¹ Aladdin (á-lád/in), 人名. ² China (chí/ná), 中華. ³ Tailor, 裁縫; 縫工. ⁴ Mustapha (mús-táf/á), 人名. ⁵ Support, 撫養. ⁶ Careless, 鹵莽. ⁷ Idle, 怠惰. ⁸ Disobedient, 忤逆. ⁹ Fellow, 人; 漢子. ¹⁰ All day, 整日; 終日. ¹¹ Public, 公共. ¹² For the day, 盡一日之長 (即“非晚不歸”之意). ¹³ Punished, 受責. ¹⁴ In vain, 無效. ¹⁵ Gave him up, 置之度外. give up, 棄. ¹⁶ Idler, 閒蕩者; 遊手好閒之徒. ¹⁷ Died of . . . grief, 鬱鬱而卒; 死於憂悶 (grief 之後, 省去 that 一字). ¹⁸ Free from restraint, 無所拘束; 毫無管束; 一無繩束.

companions,¹ never thinking how useless a man this would make of him. Playing thus with his evil mates² one day, a stranger³ passing by stood to observe⁴ him.

The stranger was a person known as the African⁵ magician. Only two days before, he had arrived from Africa,⁶ his native⁷ country; and, seeing in Aladdin's face something that showed the boy to be well fitted for his purposes,⁸ he had taken⁹ pains to learn all that he could find out about him.

"Child," he said to Aladdin, calling him aside, "was not your father called Mustapha the tailor?"

"Yes, sir," answered the boy; "but he has been dead a long time."

Then the African magician embraced Aladdin and kissed him, saying with tears in his eyes, "I am your uncle.¹⁰ I knew you at first sight; you are so like my dear brother." Then he gave the boy a¹¹ handful of money, and said: "Give my love² to your mother, and tell her that I will visit her to-morrow, that I may see where my good brother lived and died."

"You have no uncle," said Aladdin's mother when she had heard his story. "Neither your father nor I ever had a brother."

Again the next day the magician found Aladdin playing in the streets, and embraced him as before, and put two pieces of gold into his hand, saying: "Carry this to your mother. Tell her I shall come to sup¹² with you to-night; but show me first where you live."

¹ Companions, 伴侶. ² Mates, 伴; 小伴. ³ Stranger, 生人; 不相識之人. ⁴ Observe, 看; 觀察. ⁵ African magician, 非洲術士. ⁶ Africa (ăf/ri-ká), 亞非利加洲. ⁷ Native country, 本國; 本籍. ⁸ Purposes, 意思; 目的. ⁹ Taken pains, 竭力; 盡心. ¹⁰ Uncle, 伯父; 叔父. ¹¹ A handful, 一撮; 一手所能容之量. ¹² Sup, 晚餐.

This¹ done, Aladdin ran home with the money, and all day his mother made ready to receive their guest. Just as they began to fear that he might not find the house, the African magician knocked² at the door, and came in, bringing wine and fruits of every sort. After words³ of greeting to them both, he asked only to⁴ be placed where he might face⁵ the sofa⁶ on which Mustapha used⁷ to sit.

"My poor brother!" he exclaimed.⁸ "How unhappy am I, not to have come soon enough to give you one last embrace!"

Then he told Aladdin's mother how he had left their native land of China forty years ago, had traveled in many lands, and finally settled⁹ in Africa. The¹⁰ desire had seized him to see his brother and his home once more, and therefore he had come, alas! too late.

When the widow¹¹ wept at the thought of her husband, the African magician turned to Aladdin and asked: "What¹² business do you follow? Are¹³ you of any trade?"

The boy hung¹⁴ his head, and his mother added to his shame by saying: "Aladdin is an idle fellow. He would not learn his father's trade, and now will not heed¹⁵ me, but spends his time where you found him, in the streets. Unless you can persuade¹⁶ him to mend¹⁷ his ways, some day I must turn¹⁸ him out to shift¹⁹ for himself."

¹ This done = this being done = while this had been done. ² Knocked at the door, 敲門; 叩門. ³ Words of greeting, 問候之語; 寒暄. ⁴ To be placed, 坐. ⁵ Face, 面對. ⁶ Sofa, 睡椅; 榻. ⁷ Used to, 慣; 常. ⁸ Exclaimed, 大聲而言曰. ⁹ Settled, 定居. ¹⁰ The desire had seized him, 忽生 . . . 之念. ¹¹ Widow, 寡婦 (指 Aladdin 之母). ¹² What business do you follow, 作何生意. ¹³ Are you of any trade, 有何行業. ¹⁴ Hung, 垂下. ¹⁵ Heed, 注意 (即 "順從" 之意). ¹⁶ Persuade, 勸戒. ¹⁷ Mend his ways, 改行; 改過; 變其行爲. ¹⁸ Turn him out, 逐之門外; 逐出家門. ¹⁹ Shift for himself, 自謀生計. shift, 謀 (謂謀生也).

Again the widow wept, and the magician said:

"This is not well, nephew.¹ But there are many trades besides your father's.² What say you to having a shop, which I will furnish³ for you with fine stuffs³ and linens? Tell me freely."

This seemed an easy life, and Aladdin, who hated work, jumped⁴ at the plan. "Well, then," said the magician, "come with me to-morrow, and, after clothing you handsomely,⁵ we will open the shop."

Soon after supper the stranger took⁶ his leave. On the next day he bought the boy his promised clothes, and entertained⁷ him with a⁸ company of merchants at his inn. When he brought Aladdin home to his mother at night, she called⁹ down many blessings on¹⁰ his head for all his kindness.

Early the next morning the magician came¹¹ for Aladdin, saying they would spend that day in the country, and on the next would buy the shop. So away they walked through the gardens and palaces outside of the city. Each palace seemed more beautiful than the last, and they had gone far before Aladdin thought the morning half gone. By the brink¹² of a fountain they rested, and ate the cakes and fruit which the magician took from his girdle.¹³ At the same time he gave the boy good advice about the company

¹ Nephew, 姪子. ² Furnish, 備辦; 供給. ³ Stuffs, 呢絨. ⁴ Jumped at, 樂從. ⁵ Handsomely, 華美; 華麗. ⁶ Took his leave, 告辭. ⁷ Entertained, 款待. ⁸ A company of merchants, 一夥商人. ⁹ Called down many blessings, 祈天賜福. called down, 祈求. ¹⁰ On his head, 爲其; 爲之. ¹¹ Came for, 來喚; 爲 . . . 而來. ¹² Brink, 邊. ¹³ Girdle, 束腰帶.

he should keep.¹ On they went again after their repast,² still farther into the country, till they nearly reached the place, between two mountains, where the magician intended to do the work that had brought him from Africa to China.

“We will go no farther now,” said he to Aladdin. “I will show you here some strange things. While I strike³ a light, gather⁴ me all the loose,⁵ dry sticks⁶ you can see, to kindle⁷ a fire with.”

There was soon a great heap of them, and when they were in a blaze⁸ the magician threw in some incense and spoke magical⁹ words which Aladdin did not understand.¹⁰

This was scarcely¹¹ done when the earth opened¹² just before the magician, and they both saw a stone with a brass¹³ ring fixed in it. Aladdin was so frightened that he would have run away, but the magician seized him and gave¹⁴ him a box on the ear that knocked¹⁵ him down.

“What have I done, to be treated¹⁶ so?” cried Aladdin, trembling.¹⁷

“I am your uncle,” was the answer; “I stand¹⁸ in your father’s place; make no replies. But, child,” he added softening,¹⁹ “do not be afraid. I shall ask nothing but that you obey me promptly, if you would have the good things I intend for you. Know, then, that under this stone there is a treasure that will make you richer than the greatest

¹ Keep, 交; 交遊. ² Repast, 小食; 點心. ³ Strike a light, 打火; 燃火. ⁴ Gather, 收集; 拾. ⁵ Loose, 散在地上. ⁶ Sticks, 柴; 薪. ⁷ Kindle, 點; 燃. ⁸ Blaze, 火焰; 烈焰. ⁹ Magical words, 咒語. ¹⁰ Understand, 懂; 了解. ¹¹ Scarcely done, 剛了; 甫畢. ¹² Opened, 開; 迸裂. ¹³ Brass ring, 銅圈. ¹⁴ Gave him a box on the ear, 以拳擊其耳. box, 擊拳. ¹⁵ Knocked him down, 將其打倒. ¹⁶ Treated, 待; 待遇. ¹⁷ Trembling, 戰兢; 震懼. ¹⁸ Stand in your father’s place, 即處於爾父之地位 (謂爾之視我當猶父也). ¹⁹ Softening, 稍稍柔和 (謂語時聲略柔和也).

monarch¹ on earth. No one but yourself may lift this stone or enter the cave; so you must do instantly whatever I command, for this is a² matter of great importance to both of us."

"Well, uncle, what is to be done?" said Aladdin, losing his fear.

"Take hold of the ring and lift up that stone."

"Indeed, uncle, I am not strong enough; you must help me."

"No," said the magician; "if I help you we can do nothing. Lift it yourself, and it will come easily." Aladdin obeyed, raised the stone with ease,³ and laid it on one side.

When the stone was pulled up, there appeared⁴ a staircase⁵ about three or four feet deep,⁶ leading⁷ to a door. "Descend,⁸ my son," said the magician, "and open that door. It will lead you into a palace divided⁹ into three great halls. Before you enter the first, tuck¹⁰ up your robe with care. Pass through the three halls, but never touch¹¹ the walls, even with your clothes. If you do you will die instantly. At the end of the third hall you will find a door opening into a garden planted¹² with trees loaded¹³ with fine fruit. Walk directly across the garden to a terrace,¹⁴ where you will see a niche¹⁵ before you, and in the niche a lighted lamp. Take it down and put¹⁶ it out. Throw away the wick¹⁷ and pour out the liquer,¹⁸ which is not oil and will not hurt your clothes; then put the lamp into your waistband and bring it to me."

¹ Monarch, 王; 君主. ² A matter of great importance, 重要之事.
³ Ease, 容易; 不費力. ⁴ Appeared, 露出. ⁵ Staircase, 梯; 階級.
⁶ Deep, 深. ⁷ Leading to, 通; 達. ⁸ Descend, 下去; 向下走. ⁹ Divided into, 分爲.
¹⁰ Tuck up, 挽起; 捫. ¹¹ Touch, 觸. ¹² Planted, 種; 植.
¹³ Loaded with, 結滿. ¹⁴ Terrace, 層臺; 壇. ¹⁵ Niche (nich), 壁龕.
¹⁶ Put it out, 熄之; 吹滅其火. ¹⁷ Wick, 燈心. ¹⁸ Liquor, 酒質.

The magician then took a ring from his finger and put it on Aladdin's, saying: "This is a talisman¹ against all evil, so long as you obey me. Go, therefore, boldly,² and we shall both be rich all our lives."

Aladdin descended, found all to be as the magician had said, and carefully obeyed his orders. When he had put the lamp in his waistband, he wondered at the beauty of the fruit in the garden, white, red, green, blue, purple,³ yellow, and of all other colors,⁴ and gathered some of every sort. The fruits were really precious jewels; but Aladdin, ignorant⁵ of their immense⁶ value, would have preferred⁷ figs,⁸ grapes,⁹ or pomegranates.¹⁰ Nevertheless,¹¹ he filled two purses his uncle had given him, besides the skirts¹² of his vest,¹³ and crammed¹⁴ his bosom as full as it would hold.

Then he returned with extreme¹⁵ care, and found the magician anxiously waiting.

"Pray, uncle," he said, "lend¹⁶ me your hand to help me out."

"Give me the lamp first," replied the magician. "It will be troublesome to you."

"Indeed, uncle, I cannot now, but I will as soon as I am up."

The magician was bent¹⁷ on taking it at once from his hand, but the boy was so laden¹⁸ with his fruit that he flatly¹⁹ refused to give it over before getting out of the cave.

¹ Talisman, 辟邪之物。 ² Boldly, 勇; 大膽。 ³ Purple, 紫。 ⁴ Colors, 色; 顏色。 ⁵ Ignorant of, 不知; 不明。 ⁶ Immense, 極大; 無限。 ⁷ Preferred, 願有; 寧有。 ⁸ Figs, 無花果。 ⁹ Grapes, 葡萄。 ¹⁰ Pomegranates (pōm-grān/āts), 石榴。 ¹¹ Nevertheless, 雖然。 ¹² Skirts, 衣襟。 ¹³ Vest, 外衣; 袍。 ¹⁴ Crammed, 裝; 塞滿。 ¹⁵ Extreme, 極; 極端。 ¹⁶ Lend me your hand to help me out, 請援我以手, 俾我得出。 lend me your hand, 助我一臂之力。 help me out = help me to come out. ¹⁷ Bent on, 定見; 定要。 ¹⁸ Laden, 裝滿; 攜帶甚多。 ¹⁹ Flatly, 明白; 決絕。

This drove¹ the magician into such a passion² that he threw more incense into the fire, spoke two magical words, and instantly the stone moved back into its place, with the earth above it, as it had been when they first reached the spot.

Aladdin now saw that he had been deceived³ by one who was not his uncle, but a cruel⁴ enemy. In⁵ truth, this man had learned from his magic⁶ books about the secret⁷ and value of the Wonderful Lamp, which would make him richer than any earthly⁸ ruler if he could but receive it freely given into his hands by another person. He had chosen Aladdin for this purpose, and when it failed he set out immediately on his return to Africa, but avoided⁹ the town, that none might ask him what had become of the boy.

II

Aladdin was indeed in a sorry plight.¹⁰ He called for his uncle, but in vain. The earth was closed above him, and the palace door at the foot of the steps. His cries and tears brought him no help. At last he said: "There is no strength or power but in the great and high God;" and in¹¹ joining his hands to pray he rubbed¹² the ring which the magician had put on his finger. Instantly a genie of frightful aspect¹³ appeared and said: "What wouldst¹⁴ thou have? I am ready to obey thee. I serve¹⁵ him who possesses¹⁶ the ring on his finger,—I, and the other slaves of that ring."

• ¹ Drove, 驅; 逼. ² Passion, 忿怒. ³ Deceived, 欺騙. ⁴ Cruel enemy, 殘忍之仇人. ⁵ In truth, 其實. ⁶ Magic books, 魔術之書; 天書. ⁷ Secret, 祕密之事. ⁸ Earthly ruler, 世間之帝王. ⁹ Avoided, 避開. ¹⁰ Plight, 情形; 境地. ¹¹ In joining his hands to pray, 拱手禱告; 拱手祈天. ¹² Rubbed, 擦; 摩. ¹³ Aspect, 容貌. ¹⁴ Wouldst thou = would you. ¹⁵ Serve 侍奉. ¹⁶ Possesses, 有; 得; 獲.

At another time Aladdin would have been frightened at the sight of such a figure;¹ but his danger gave him courage² to say: "Whoever thou³ art, deliver⁴ me from this place."

He had no sooner spoken these words than he found himself outside the cave, of which no sign⁵ was to be seen on the surface⁶ of the earth. He lost no time in making⁷ his way home, where he fainted⁸ from weakness, and afterwards told his mother of his strange adventure.⁹ They were both very bitter¹⁰ against the cruel magician, but this did not prevent¹¹ Aladdin from sleeping soundly¹² until late the next morning. As there was nothing for breakfast,¹³ he bethought¹⁴ himself of selling the lamp in¹⁵ order to buy food. "Here it is," said his mother, "but it is very dirty.¹⁶ If I rub it clean I believe it will bring¹⁷ more."

No sooner had she begun to rub it than a hideous¹⁸ genie of gigantic¹⁹ size appeared before her, and said in a voice²⁰ of thunder: "What wouldst thou have? I am ready to obey thee²¹ as thy slave, and the slave of all those who have the lamp in their hands,—I, and the other slaves of the lamp."

In²² terror at the sight, Aladdin's mother fainted; but the boy, who had already seen a genie, said boldly: "I am hungry; bring me something to eat."

¹ Figure, 形狀. ² Courage, 勇氣; 勇敢. ³ Thou art=you are.
⁴ Deliver, 解放; 救出. ⁵ Sign, 痕跡. ⁶ Surface of the earth, 地面.
⁷ Making his way home, 歸家. ⁸ Fainted from weakness, 疲極昏去.
⁹ Adventure, 冒險之事. ¹⁰ Bitter against, 深恨; 痛恨. ¹¹ Prevent, 阻止.
¹² Soundly, 沉; 熟. ¹³ Breakfast, 早餐. ¹⁴ Bethought himself of, 想起; 意欲.
¹⁵ In order to, 庶可; 俾能. ¹⁶ Dirty, 污; 不潔. ¹⁷ Bring more, 得價可以稍多. ¹⁸ Hideous, 可怕; 醜惡驚人.
¹⁹ Gigantic, 巨大. ²⁰ Voice of thunder, 聲如震雷. ²¹ Thee=you.
²² In terror, 驚怕.

The genie disappeared,¹ and returned in an instant with a large silver² tray,³ holding twelve covered silver dishes filled with tempting⁴ viands, six large white⁵ bread cakes on two plates,⁶ two flacons⁷ of wine, and two silver cups. All these he placed upon a carpet, and disappeared before Aladdin's mother had come⁸ out of her swoon.

When she was⁹ herself again, they satisfied¹⁰ their hunger, and still there was enough food for the rest of that day and two meals¹¹ on the next. This they put¹² aside, and Aladdin's mother made him tell of all that had passed between him and the genie during her swoon. The simple woman thought it all a dangerous and wicked business, and begged Aladdin to sell both the lamp and ring; but he persuaded her to let him keep them both, on¹³ the condition that she should have nothing to¹⁴ do with genies again.

When they had eaten all the food left from the feast the genie brought, Aladdin sold the silver plates one by one to a Jew, who cheated¹⁵ him by paying but a small part of their value, and yet made the boy think himself rich. The tray he sold last, and when the money it brought was spent he rubbed the lamp again, and again the genie appeared, and provided¹⁶ the mother and son with another feast and other silver dishes. These kept¹⁷ them in funds for some time longer, especially as Aladdin had the good fortune to

¹ Disappeared, 不見; 去. ² Silver, 銀. ³ Tray, 大盤 (以盛食器者也). ⁴ Tempting viands, 美味之食物. Tempting, 誘; 誘惑 (謂誘人喫食也). viands, 食物. ⁵ White bread cakes, 白麵製成之糕. ⁶ Plates, 盤. ⁷ Flacons (fläg/ünz), 小口酒瓶; 細口之壺. ⁸ Come out of her swoon, 蘇醒; 復活. swoon, 昏絕. ⁹ Was herself again, 醒; 回復原狀. ¹⁰ Satisfied their hunger, 充飢; 飽食. ¹¹ Meals, 食; 餐. ¹² Put aside, 置於他處. ¹³ On the condition, 約定; 以 . . . 爲條件. ¹⁴ To do with, 與 . . . 有所關涉. ¹⁵ Cheated, 欺; 騙. ¹⁶ Provided, 供給. ¹⁷ Kept them in funds, 使之充裕. funds, 錢財.

meet with an honest goldsmith,¹ who paid him the full value of the metal.² Aladdin, all the while, by visiting the shops of merchants, was gaining³ knowledge of the world and a desire to improve⁴ himself. From the jewelers he came to know that the fruits he had gathered when he got the lamp were not⁵ merely colored glass, but stones of untold⁶ value, the rarest in the city. This, however, he had the prudence⁷ not to tell to any one, even his mother.

III

One day, as Aladdin was walking about the town, he heard an order proclaimed⁸ that the people should close their shops and houses and keep⁹ within doors while the Princess Buddir¹⁰ al Buddoor, the Sultan's daughter, should go to the bath and return. Aladdin was filled with an eager desire to see the face of the Princess, and contrived¹¹ to place himself behind the door of the bath. When she was a few paces¹² away from it she removed her veil, and Aladdin saw for a moment one of the most beautiful faces in the world. When she passed by him he quitted¹³ his hiding¹⁴ place, and went home thoughtful and grave.¹⁵

"Are you ill?" asked his mother.

"No," he answered, "but I love the Princess more than I can express, and am resolved¹⁶ that I will ask¹⁷ her in marriage of the Sultan."

¹ Goldsmith, 金匠. ² Metal, 金屬 (五金之通稱). ³ Gaining knowledge of the world, 粗知世事. ⁴ Improve, 改良; 改正. ⁵ Not merely (=only) . . . , but . . . , 非僅 . . . , 却是 ⁶ Untold, 無限. ⁷ Prudence, 謹慎. ⁸ Proclaimed, 布告; 宣布. ⁹ Keep within doors, 避於戶內. ¹⁰ Buddir al Buddoor (bōō/dēr āl bōō/dōōr), 人名. ¹¹ Contrived, 設法; 設計. ¹² Paces, 步. ¹³ Quitted, 離; 棄. ¹⁴ Hiding place, 避處; 隱處; 藏身之處. ¹⁵ Grave, 沉靜. ¹⁶ Resolved, 定見; 決定. ¹⁷ Ask her in marriage of the Sultan, 向蘇丹求彼爲妻.

His mother thought him mad,¹ but Aladdin said: "I have the slaves of the lamp and the ring to help me," and then told her for the first time what riches he possessed in the jewels brought from the underground² palace. "These," he said, "will secure the favor of the Sultan. You have a large porcelain³ dish fit to hold them; fetch it, and let us see how they will look when we have arranged⁴ them according to their different colors."

Their eyes were dazzled⁵ by the splendor of the jewels when they were arranged in the dish, and Aladdin's mother consented at once to take them to the Sultan, and ask⁶ his daughter's hand for her son.

Early the next morning she wrapped the dish in two fine napkins⁷ and set out for the palace. Though the crowd⁸ was great, she made her way into the divan,⁹ or audience¹⁰ hall, and placed herself just before the Sultan, the Grand Vizier, and other lords who sat beside him. But there were many cases¹¹ for him to hear¹² and judge, and her turn did not come that day. She told Aladdin that she was sure the Sultan saw her, and that she would try again.

For six days more she carried the jewels to the divan, and stood in the same place. On the sixth the Sultan, as he was leaving the hall, said to the Grand Vizier: "For some time I have observed a certain woman standing near me every day with something wrapped in a napkin. If she comes again, do not fail to call her, that I may hear what she has to say."

¹ Mad, 狂; 瘋. ² Underground, 地下. ³ Porcelain, 瓷器. ⁴ Arranged, 排列; 安排. ⁵ Dazzled, 眩. ⁶ Ask his daughter's hand for her son, 爲其子求蘇丹之女爲婿; 求蘇丹以公主下嫁於其子. ask . . . hand, 求婚. ⁷ Napkins, 布; 布巾. ⁸ Crowd was great, 人多; 人頗擁擠. crowd, 多人聚在一處. ⁹ Divan, 朝廷; 宮闈. ¹⁰ Audience hall, 謁見室; 朝堂. ¹¹ Cases, 案件; 訟案. ¹² Hear and judge, 聽斷. hear, 聽訟. judge, 判案.

On the next day, therefore, she was called forward. She bowed her head till it touched the carpet on the platform¹ of the throne. Then the Sultan bade her rise and said:

“Good woman, I have observed you many days. What business² brings you here?”

“Monarch³ of monarchs,” she replied, “I beg you to pardon the boldness of my petition.⁴”

“Well,” said the Sultan, “I will forgive you, be it what it may, and no hurt shall come to you. Speak boldly.”

This gave⁵ her heart to tell the errand⁶ on which her son had sent her. The Sultan listened without anger till she was done, and then asked what she had brought tied up in the napkin. She took the china⁷ dish, which she had set down at the foot of the throne, untied⁸ it, and presented⁹ it to the Sultan.

His wonder knew no bounds when he looked upon the jewels. Not until he received the gift from the woman's hands could he find¹⁰ words to say, “How rich! how beautiful!”

Then he turned to the Grand Vizier and said: “Behold,¹¹ admire, wonder! and confess¹² that your eyes never beheld jewels so rich and beautiful before. What sayest¹³ thou to such a present!¹⁴ Is it not worthy of the Princess, my daughter? Ought I not to bestow¹⁵ her on one who values her at so great a price?”

¹ Platform, 臺; 壇. ² Business, 事; 事故. ³ Monarch of monarchs, 王中之王; 大王. ⁴ Petition, 請願; 請求. ⁵ Gave her heart, 使之膽壯; heart, 勇敢. ⁶ Errand, 差遣. ⁷ China, 瓷. ⁸ Untied, 解開. ⁹ Presented, 呈; 獻. ¹⁰ Find words to say, 能出言; 能發言. ¹¹ Behold, 視; 瞻視. ¹² Confess, 承認. ¹³ Sayest thou = say you = do you say. ¹⁴ Present, 禮物; 貢獻. ¹⁵ Bestow, 賜 (即“令 . . . 嫁”之意).

"I cannot¹ but own," replied the Grand Vizier, "that the present is worthy of the Princess. But wait for three months. Before that time I hope my son, whom you regard² with favor, will be able to make a nobler³ present than this Aladdin, of whom your majesty knows nothing."

The Sultan granted this request, and said to Aladdin's mother:

"Good woman, go home, and tell your son that I agree to what you have proposed, but I cannot marry the Princess, my daughter, for three months. At the end of that time come again."

The news which Aladdin's mother brought home filled him and her with joy. From⁴ that time forth he counted every week, day, and hour as they passed. When two of the three months were gone, Aladdin's mother went out one evening to buy some oil, and found the streets full of joyful people, and officers busy with preparation⁵ for some festival.

"What does it mean?" she asked the oil merchant.

"Whence came you, good woman," said he, "that you do not know that the Grand Vizier's son is⁶ to marry the Princess Buddir al Buddoor, the Sultan's daughter, to-night?"

Home she ran to Aladdin and cried: "Child, you are undone!⁶ the Sultan's fine promises will come⁷ to nought. This night the Grand Vizier's son is to marry the Princess Buddir al Buddoor."

¹ Cannot but own, 不能不承認. ² Regard, 看待. ³ Nobler, 更貴重. ⁴ From that time forth, 自此以後; 此後. ⁵ Preparation, 預備; 準備. ⁶ Undone, 完了 (即 "失敗", 之意). ⁷ Come to nought, 歸於無效; 歸於烏有. nought 或作 naught (即 nothing 之意), 虛無; 烏有.

Aladdin was thunderstruck,¹ but wasted² no time in idle words against the Sultan. He went at once to his chamber, took the lamp, rubbed it in the same place as before, when instantly the genie appeared, and said to him:

“What wouldst thou have? I am ready to obey thee as thy slave,—I, and the other slaves of the lamp.”

“Hear me,” said Aladdin; “thou³ hast hitherto⁴ obeyed me, but now I am about to impose⁵ on thee a harder task. The Sultan’s daughter, who was promised me as my bride,⁶ will this night be wed to the son of the Grand Vizier. Bring them both hither⁷ to me when they are married.”

“Master,” replied the genie, “I obey you.”

Aladdin did not have to wait long after supping with his mother and going to his chamber to⁸ be shown again that the genie was indeed his faithful slave. On this night and the next the Princess and the Grand Vizier’s son were borne away from the Sultan’s palace in a manner which none could understand, not even they themselves. The strange event⁹ was told to few, but the Sultan was one of them. He consulted¹⁰ with the Grand Vizier, and, as both of these parents feared to expose¹¹ the young couple to further dangers from unseen foes, the marriage was canceled,¹² and all the merrymaking¹³ in¹⁴ honor of it was stopped. None but Aladdin knew the cause of all the trouble,

¹ Thunderstruck, 大驚失措。 ² Wasted no time in idle words against, 不以無益之言罷耗其時間。 ³ Thou hast=you have. ⁴ Hitherto, 自昔至今。 ⁵ Impose on, 課; 科; 委。 ⁶ Bride, 新娘; 新婦。 ⁷ Hither (作 to this place 解), 到此處。 ⁸ To be shown, 知。 ⁹ Event, 事。 ¹⁰ Consulted, 商議; 商酌。 ¹¹ Expose the young couple to further dangers, 使年少之夫婦多歷危險。 expose . . . to, 使 . . . 受。 couple, 夫婦; 配偶。 ¹² Canceled, 取消。 ¹³ Merrymaking, 戲樂; 晏樂。 ¹⁴ In honor of, 慶賀; 紀念; 因慶賀 . . . 而舉行。

and he kept his secret to himself. Least¹ of all did the Sultan and Grand Vizier, who had quite forgotten Aladdin, suspect² that he had³ a hand in the matter.

IV

Of⁴ course Aladdin had not forgotten the Sultan's promise, and on the very day which ended the three months, his mother came again to the divan, and stood in her old place. When the Sultan saw her she was called forward, and, having bowed to the floor,⁵ she said:

"Sire, I come at the end of three months to ask you to fulfill⁶ the promise you made to my son."

The Sultan could hardly believe the request had been made in⁷ earnest, and, after a few words with the Grand Vizier, decided to propose⁸ terms which one of Aladdin's humble⁹ position could not possibly fulfill.

"Good woman," he said, "it is true that sultans ought to abide¹⁰ by their word, and I am ready to keep mine. But as I cannot marry my daughter without further proof¹¹ that your son will be able to support her in royal¹² state, you may tell him that I will fulfill my promise so soon as he shall send me forty trays of massy¹³ gold, full of the same sort of jewels you have already given me, and carried by forty black¹⁴ slaves, who shall be led by as many young and handsome white¹⁵ slaves, all dressed magnificently.¹⁶

¹ Least of all, 毫不; 絕不. ² Suspect, 疑惑. ³ Had a hand in, 參與; 預聞. ⁴ Of course, 當然; 自然. ⁵ Floor, 地板. ⁶ Fulfill the promise, 踐言; 踐約. ⁷ In earnest, 出於真言; 真摯. ⁸ Propose terms, 提出條款; 訂條件. ⁹ Humble, 卑微. ¹⁰ Abide by their word, 踐其所言; 不背所約. ¹¹ Proof, 證據; 明證. ¹² Royal state, 王室之起居. ¹³ Massy, 重; 厚. ¹⁴ Black, 黑 (謂黑種人). ¹⁵ White, 白 (謂白種人). ¹⁶ Magnificently, 華麗.

When this is done, I will bestow my daughter, the Princess, upon him. Go, good woman, and tell him so, and I will wait till you bring me his answer."

As Aladdin's mother hurried home she laughed to think how far the Sultan's demand¹ would be beyond her son's power.² "He awaits³ your answer," she said to Aladdin when she had told him all, and added, laughing, "I believe he may wait⁴ long."

"Not so long as you think," replied Aladdin. "This demand is a mere trifle. I will prepare to answer it at once."

In his own chamber he summoned⁵ the genie of the lamp, who appeared without delay,⁶ and promised to carry⁷ out Aladdin's commands. Within a very short time, a train⁸ of forty black slaves, led by as many white slaves, appeared opposite the house in which Aladdin lived. Each black slave carried on his head a basin⁹ of massy gold, full of pearls,¹⁰ diamonds, rubies,¹¹ and emeralds.¹² Aladdin then said to his mother:

"Madam,¹³ pray lose no time. Go to the Sultan before he leaves the divan, and make this gift to him, that he may see how ardently¹⁴ I desire¹⁵ his daughter's hand."

With Aladdin's mother at¹⁶ its head, the procession¹⁷ began to move through the streets, which were soon filled with people praising¹⁸ the beauty and bearing¹⁹ of the

¹ Demand, 要求. ² Power, 權力; 能力. ³ Awaits, 等待. ⁴ Wait long, 久待 (意謂必無回音). ⁵ Summoned, 召. ⁶ Delay, 遲延. ⁷ Carry out, 實行. ⁸ Train, 一隊; 一羣. ⁹ Basin, 盤. ¹⁰ Pearls, 珠. ¹¹ Rubies, 紅寶石. ¹² Emeralds, 綠寶石. ¹³ Madam, 太太. ¹⁴ Ardently, 熱心. ¹⁵ Desire his daughter's hand, 欲與其女結婚. ¹⁶ At its head, 領頭; 在前. ¹⁷ Procession, 整列前行; 進行之行列 (指送禮之人). ¹⁸ Praising, 稱讚. ¹⁹ Bearing, 身段; 態度.

slaves, splendidly dressed, and walking¹ at an equal distance from one another. At the palace nothing so brilliant had ever been seen before. The richest robes of the court looked poor beside the dresses of these slaves. When they had all entered they formed² a half circle around the Sultan's throne; the black slaves laid the golden trays on the carpet, touched³ it with their foreheads, and at the same time the white slaves did likewise. When they rose the black slaves uncovered⁴ the trays, and then all stood with⁵ their arms crossed over their breasts.

This done, Aladdin's mother advanced⁶ to the throne, bowed to the floor, and said:

"Sire, my son knows that this present is much below⁷ the notice of the Princess Buddir al Buddoor, but hopes that your majesty will accept⁸ of it, and make it pleasing to the Princess. His hope is the greater because he has tried to carry out your own wish."

With delight the Sultan replied:

"Go and tell your son that I wait with⁹ open arms to embrace him; and the¹⁰ more haste he makes to come and receive the Princess, my daughter, from my hands, the greater pleasure he will give me."

While he showed the slaves and the jewels to the Princess, Aladdin's mother carried the good news to her son. "My son," she said, "you may rejoice, for the Sultan has

¹ Walking at an equal distance from one another, 行時彼此距離前後相同。 ² Formed a half circle, 列成半圓形。 ³ Touched it with their foreheads, 以額觸之, 如叩頭然。 ⁴ Uncovered, 揭去其蓋; 打開。 ⁵ With their arms crossed over their breasts, 兩臂交於胸前 (所以示敬也)。 ⁶ Advanced, 前進; 向 . . . 而進。 ⁷ Below the notice of, 不配叫 . . . 注意; 不免為 . . . 所輕視。 ⁸ Accept of, 收納; 受。 ⁹ With open arms, 張臂。 ¹⁰ The more haste he makes to come . . . the greater pleasure he will give me, 其來 . . . 愈快, 使我愈樂。

declared that you shall marry the Princess Buddir al Buddoor. He waits for you with impatience.¹”

Aladdin was overjoyed, but, saying little, retired² to his chamber. Here he rubbed the lamp, and, when its slave appeared, said:

“Genie, convey³ me at once to a bath,⁴ and give me the richest robe ever worn by a monarch.”

This was soon done, and he found himself again in his own chamber, where the genie asked if he had any other commands.

“Yes,” answered Aladdin, “bring me a charger⁵ better than the best in the Sultan’s stables.⁶ Fit him with trappings⁷ worthy of his value. Furnish twenty slaves, clothed as richly as those who carried the presents to the Sultan, to walk by my side and follow me, and twenty more to go before me in⁸ two ranks. Besides these, bring my mother six women slaves, as richly dressed as any of the Princess Buddir al Buddoor’s, each carrying a⁹ complete dress fit for a Sultan’s wife. I want also ten thousand pieces of gold in ten purses; go, and make haste.”

The commands were instantly fulfilled, and Aladdin gave the six women slaves to his mother, with the six dresses they had brought, wrapped¹⁰ in silver tissue. Of the ten purses he gave four to his mother, and the other six he left in the hands of the slaves who brought them, saying that they must march¹¹ before him and throw the money by handfuls into the crowd as the procession moved to the

¹ Impatience, 不耐。 ² Retired, 退; 入。 ³ Convey, 送; 攜。 ⁴ Bath, 浴場; 浴室。 ⁵ Charger, 戰馬; 良馬。 ⁶ Stables, 馬廄。 ⁷ Trappings, 裝飾(馬之裝飾物, 如鞍轡等)。 ⁸ In two ranks, 雙行; 分爲兩列。 ⁹ A complete dress, 全套衣服。 ¹⁰ Wrapped in silver tissue, 以銀絲所織之巾裹之。 tissue, 織物; 與金銀線夾雜織成之帛。 ¹¹ March, 行; 整列而行。

Sultan's palace. Mounted on his horse, Aladdin, though he had never ridden before, appeared with a grace¹ which the most practiced² horseman might have envied.³ It was no wonder that the people made the air echo⁴ with their shouts,⁵ especially⁶ when the slaves threw out the handfuls of gold.

The Sultan met him at the palace with joy and surprise that the son of so humble a mother as the woman he had seen should have such dignity⁷ and good⁸ looks, and should be dressed more richly than he himself had ever been. He embraced Aladdin, held him by the hand, and made him sit near the throne. Then there was a great feast, and after it the contract⁹ of marriage between the Princess and Aladdin was drawn¹⁰ up. When the Sultan asked him if he would stay in the palace and complete¹¹ the marriage that day, Aladdin answered:

"Sire, though my impatience is great to enter on the honor your majesty has granted, yet I beg first to be allowed to build a palace worthy of the Princess, your daughter. I pray you to give me ground enough near your own, and I will have it finished with the utmost¹² speed."

The request was granted, and Aladdin took his leave with as much politeness¹³ as if he had always lived at court. Again, as he passed through the streets, the people shouted and wished¹⁴ him joy. In his own chamber once more, he took the lamp, rubbed it, and there was the genie.

¹ Grace, 一種瀟灑自然之態. ² Practiced horseman, 精於馬術之人; 善騎者. ³ Envied, 妒忌; 羨慕. ⁴ Echo, 發回聲; 返響. ⁵ Shouts, 喊聲; 歡呼. ⁶ Especially, 尤其; 最甚. ⁷ Dignity, 威儀. ⁸ Good looks, 美貌. ⁹ Contract of marriage, 婚約; 婚書. ¹⁰ Drawn up, 訂定; 草定; 畫成. ¹¹ Complete the marriage, 成婚; 成禮. ¹² Utmost speed, 極端之快; 疾速; 最短時間. ¹³ Politeness, 禮貌. ¹⁴ Wished him joy, 祝彼快樂.

“Genie,” said Aladdin, “build me a palace fit to receive the Princess Buddir al Buddoor. Let its materials¹ be of the rarest. Let its walls be of massive² gold and silver bricks. Let each front³ contain six windows, and let the lattices⁴ of these (except one, which must be left⁵ unfinished) be enriched with diamonds, rubies, and emeralds, beyond⁶ anything of the kind ever seen in the world. Let there be courts and a spacious⁷ garden, kitchens,⁸ storehouses, stables,—well equipped,⁹—officers,¹⁰ servants, and slaves. Above¹¹ all, provide a safe¹² treasure house and fill it with gold and silver. Go, and fulfill my wishes.”

Early the next morning the genie returned, and bore Aladdin to the place where the palace had been built. Everything was done as Aladdin had commanded. The officers, slaves, and grooms were at their work in hall and stable. The hall, with the twenty-four windows, was beyond¹³ his fondest hopes.

“Genie,” he said, “there is but one thing wanting,—a fine carpet for the Princess to walk upon from the Sultan’s palace to mine. Lay one down at once.”

In an instant the desire was fulfilled. Then the genie carried Aladdin to his own home.

When the Sultan looked out of his windows in the morning, he was amazed¹⁴ to see a shining¹⁵ building where there had been but an empty garden. “It must be Alad-

¹ Materials. 材料。 ² Massive. 大; 厚。 ³ Front. 面。 ⁴ Lattices. 窗櫺。 ⁵ Left unfinished. 留不完工; 不必竣工。 ⁶ Beyond anything of the kind ever seen in the world. 較世間常見此類之物遠勝。
⁷ Spacious. 寬大; 寬敞。 ⁸ Kitchens. 庖廚; 廚房。 ⁹ Equipped. 設備。
¹⁰ Officers. 辦事員 (如司事等)。 ¹¹ Above all. 爲尤要; 爲最要。 ¹² Safe treasure house. 堅固之庫。 ¹³ Beyond his fondest hopes. 出彼最高希望之外; 爲彼所不及料。 ¹⁴ Amazed. 驚詫; 目瞪口呆。 ¹⁵ Shining. 光耀; 華美。

din's palace," he said, "which I gave him leave to build for my daughter. He has wished to surprise us, and let us see what wonders can be done in a single night."

He was only a little less surprised when Aladdin's mother, dressed more richly than ever his own daughter had been, appeared at the palace. So good a son, he thought, must make a good husband. And soon the son himself appeared; and when in¹ royal pomp he left his humble house for the last time, he did not fail to take with him the Wonderful Lamp which had brought him all his good fortune, or to wear the ring he had received as a talisman.

V

His marriage to the Princess was performed² with the utmost splendor. There was feasting and music and dancing,³ and when the Princess was brought to her new palace she was so dazzled by its richness that she said to Aladdin: "I thought, Prince, there was nothing so beautiful in the world as my father's palace, but now I know that I was deceived."⁴

The next day Aladdin with a troop⁵ of slaves went himself to the Sultan and asked him to come with the Grand Vizier and lords of the court to a repast⁶ in the palace of the Princess. The Sultan gladly consented, and the nearer he came to the building the more he marveled⁷ at its grandeur. When he entered the hall of the twenty-four windows he exclaimed:

¹ In royal pomp, 以王者之儀仗. pomp, 被服華美之儀衛; 鋪張闊綽. ² Performed, 成; 行. ³ Dancing, 跳舞. ⁴ Deceived, 受欺; 誤.

⁵ Troop, 羣; 隊. ⁶ Repast, 小宴. ⁷ Marveled, 驚異.

“This palace is one of the wonders of the world. Where else shall we find walls built of gold and silver, and windows of diamonds, rubies, and emeralds? But tell me this. Why, in a hall of such beauty, was one window left incomplete?¹”

“Sire,” said Aladdin, “I left it so, that you should have the glory of finishing this hall.”

“I take your wish kindly,” said the Sultan, “and will give orders about it at once.”

When the jewelers and goldsmiths were called they undertook² to finish the window, but needed all the jewels the Sultan could give and the Grand Vizier lend for the work. Even the jewels of Aladdin’s gift were used, and after working for a month the window was not half finished. Aladdin therefore dismissed³ them all one day, bade them undo⁴ what they had done, and take the jewels back to the Sultan and Vizier. Then he rubbed his lamp, and there was the genie.

“Genie,” he said, “I ordered thee to leave one of the four⁵ and twenty windows imperfect,⁶ and thou hast obeyed me. Now I would have thee make it like the rest.” And in a moment the work was done.

The Sultan was greatly surprised when the chief jeweler brought back the stones⁷ and said that their work had been stopped, he could not tell why.⁸ A horse was brought, and the Sultan rode at once to Aladdin’s palace to ask what it all meant. One of the first things he saw there was the finished window. He could hardly believe it to

¹ Incomplete, 未完工; 未竣工. ² Undertook, 擔任; 着手. ³ Dismissed, 罷去; 辭退. ⁴ Undo, 折去. ⁵ Four and twenty = twenty-four. ⁶ Imperfect, 不完全. ⁷ Stones, 寶石. ⁸ Why = the reason, 原因; 理由.

be true, and looked very closely at all the¹ four and twenty to see if he was deceived. When he was convinced he embraced Aladdin and kissed him between the eyes and said:

“My son, what a man you are to do such things in the twinkling of an eye! There is not your² fellow in the world; the more I know the more I admire you.”

Aladdin won not only the love of the Sultan, but also of the people. As he went to one mosque³ or another to prayers, or paid⁴ visits to the Grand Vizier and lords of the court, he caused two slaves who walked by the side of his horse to throw handfuls of money to the people in the streets. Thus he lived for several years, making himself dear⁵ to all.

VI

About this time the African magician, who had supposed Aladdin to be dead in the cave where he had left him, learned by magic art that he had made his escape, and, by the help of the genie of the Wonderful Lamp, was living in royal splendor.

On the very next day the magician set out for the capital of China, where on his arrival⁶ he took⁷ up his lodging in an inn. There he quickly learned about Aladdin's wealth and goodness and popularity.⁸ As soon as he saw the palace he knew that none but genies, the slaves of the lamp, could have built it, and he returned to his inn all⁹ the more angry at Aladdin for having got what he wanted

¹ The four and twenty (指上文之數). ² Your fellow, 似汝之人; 類汝者. ³ Mosque (mōsk), 回教禮拜堂. ⁴ Paid visits to, 拜謁; 謁見. ⁵ Dear to all, 爲衆人所愛重. ⁶ Arrival, 到. ⁷ Took up his lodging, 住; 寄宿. ⁸ Popularity, 人望; 聲望. ⁹ All the more, 愈; 更.

himself. When he learned by his magic that Aladdin did not carry the lamp about with him, but left it in the palace, he rubbed his hands with glee,¹ and said: "Well, I shall have it now, and I shall make Aladdin return to his low² estate."

The next morning he learned that Aladdin had³ gone with a hunting party, to be absent eight days, three of which had passed. He needed to know no more, and quickly formed his plans. He went to a shop and asked for a⁴ dozen copper lamps. The master of the shop had not so many then, but promised them the next day, and said he would have them, as the magician wished, handsome and well polished.⁵

When the magician came back and paid⁶ for them, he put them in a basket and started⁷ directly⁸ for Aladdin's palace. As he drew⁹ near he began crying: "Who will change old lamps for new ones?" The children and people who crowded¹⁰ around hooted¹¹ and scoffed¹² at him as a madman¹³ or a fool,¹⁴ but he heeded them not, and went on crying, "Who will change old lamps for new ones?"

The Princess was in the hall with the four and twenty windows, and, seeing a crowd outside, sent one of her women slaves to find out what the man was crying. The slave returned laughing, and told of the foolish¹⁵ offer. Another slave, hearing it, said: "Now you speak of lamps.

¹ Glee, 歡喜; 快樂. ² Low estate, 卑微之地位; 貧苦之狀況. ³ Had gone with a hunting party, 與人會獵. party, 羣 (謂朋輩). ⁴ A dozen, 一打 (即十二個). ⁵ Polished, 磨光; 擦亮. ⁶ Paid for them, 付燈價. ⁷ Started, 動身; 往. ⁸ Directly, 直向. ⁹ Drew near, 走近; 將到. ¹⁰ Crowded around, 環集; 圍繞. ¹¹ Hooted, 呼叫 (所以示“惡之”之意). ¹² Scoffed, 嘲笑. ¹³ Madman, 瘋子; 狂人. ¹⁴ Fool, 癡漢; 愚人. ¹⁵ Foolish offer, 愚昧之要約. offer, 願爲之事; 要約 (對承諾 [acceptance] 而言, 賣主之要約, 得買主之承諾, 即成交易也).

I know not whether the Princess may have observed it, but there is an old one upon a shelf¹ of the Prince Aladdin's robing² room. Whoever owns it will not be sorry to find a new one in³ its stead. If the Princess chooses, she may have the pleasure of seeing whether this old man is silly⁴ enough to make the exchange."

The Princess, who knew not the value of this lamp, thought it would be a good joke⁵ to do as her slave suggested,⁶ and in a few moments it was done. The magician did not stop to cry "New lamps for old ones" again, but hurried to his inn and out of the town, setting down his basket of new lamps where nobody saw him.

When he reached a lonely⁷ spot he pulled the old lamp out of his breast, and, to make sure that it was the one he wanted, rubbed it. Instantly the genie appeared and said: "What wouldst thou have? I am ready to obey thee as thy slave, and the slave of all those who have that lamp in their hands,—both I and the other slaves of the lamp."

"I command thee," replied the magician, "to bear⁸ me and the palace which thou and the other slaves of the lamp have built in this city, with all the people in it, at once to Africa."

The genie made no reply, but in a moment he and the other slaves of the lamp had borne the magician and the palace entire⁹ to the spot where he wished it to stand.

Early the next morning, when the Sultan went as usual to gaze upon Aladdin's palace, it was nowhere¹⁰ to be seen. How so large a building that had been standing for some

¹ Shelf, 架. ² Robing room, 穿著外衣之室; 更衣室. ³ In its stead, 更替之; 代之. ⁴ Silly, 愚笨. ⁵ Joke, 笑話; 戲. ⁶ Suggested, 所言; 授意. ⁷ Lonely spot, 僻靜之區. ⁸ Bear, 載; 負; 運送. ⁹ Entire, 全部 (作疏狀字用, 今廢). ¹⁰ Nowhere to be seen, 無處可覓; 渺無蹤跡.

years could disappear so completely, and leave no trace¹ behind, he could not understand. The Grand Vizier was summoned to explain² it. In³ secret he bore⁴ no good will to Aladdin, and was glad to suggest that the very building of the palace had been by magic, and that the hunting party had been merely an excuse⁵ for the removal of the palace by the same means. The Sultan was persuaded, therefore, to send a body⁶ of his guards⁷ to seize Aladdin as a prisoner⁸ of state. When he appeared the Sultan would hear no word from him, but ordered him put to death. This displeased⁹ the people so much that the Sultan, fearing a riot,¹⁰ granted him his life and let him speak.

"Sire," said Aladdin, "I pray you to let me know the crime¹¹ by which I have lost thy¹² favor."

"Your crime!" answered the Sultan; "wretched¹³ man! do you not know it? Follow¹⁴ me and I will show you."

Then he led Aladdin to a window and said: "You ought to know where your palace stood; look, and tell me what has become of it."

Aladdin was as much amazed as the Sultan had been. "True, it is vanished,¹⁵" he said after a speechless¹⁶ pause,¹⁷ "but I have had no concern¹⁸ in its removal. I beg you to give me forty days, and if in that time I cannot restore¹⁹ it, I will offer²⁰ my head to²¹ be disposed of at your pleasure."

¹ Trace, 痕跡; 影蹤. ² Explain, 解釋. ³ In secret, 心中; 暗地.
⁴ Bore no good will, 不懷好意. ⁵ Excuse, 託言; 虛飾. ⁶ Body, 隊.
⁷ Guards, 衛兵. ⁸ Prisoner of state, 國事犯; 重犯. prisoner, 犯人.
state, 國家. ⁹ Displeased, 爲 . . . 所不喜; 違 . . . 之意. ¹⁰ Riot, 暴動; 叛亂.
¹¹ Crime, 罪. ¹² Thy = your. ¹³ Wretched, 可憐; 奸惡.
¹⁴ Follow me, 隨我來. ¹⁵ Vanished, 不見; 消滅. ¹⁶ Speechless, 默然
無言; 噤不能語. ¹⁷ Pause, 停頓. ¹⁸ Concern, 關係. ¹⁹ Restore, 復;
回復原狀. ²⁰ Offer, 獻; 奉; 請以; 願以. ²¹ To be disposed of at
your pleasure, 聽大王之意處置之.

“I give you the time you ask,” answered the Sultan, “but at the end of forty days forget not to present¹ yourself before me.”

The lords, who had courted² Aladdin in his better³ days, paid⁴ him no heed as he left the palace in extreme shame. For three days he wandered⁵ about the city, exciting⁶ the pity of all he met by asking if they had seen his palace, or could tell where it was. On the third day he wandered into the country. As he approached⁷ a river he slipped⁸ and fell down a bank. Clutching⁹ at a rock to save himself, he rubbed his ring, and instantly the genie whom he had seen in the cave appeared before him. “What wouldst thou have?” said the genie. “I am ready to obey thee as thy slave, and the slave of all those who have that ring on their finger,—both I and the other slaves of the ring.”

Aladdin had never thought of help from this quarter,¹⁰ and said with delight:

“Genie, show me where the palace I caused to be built now stands, or bring it back where it first stood.”

“Your command,” answered the genie, “is not wholly in my power; I am only the slave of the ring, and not of the lamp.”

“I command thee, then,” replied Aladdin, “by the power of the ring, to bear me to the spot where my palace stands, wherever it may be.”

These words were no sooner out of his mouth than he found himself in the midst of a large plain,¹¹ where his

¹ Present yourself, 親自前來. ² Courtied, 媚; 阿諛. ³ Better days, 得意之時. ⁴ Paid him no heed, 不之顧. ⁵ Wandered about, 徬徨而行; 往來; 周歷. ⁶ Exciting, 激起; 引起. ⁷ Approached, 走近; 行近. ⁸ Slipped, 滑; 失足. ⁹ Clutching at, 緊握; 攀住. ¹⁰ Quarter, 方面.

¹¹ Plain, 平原.

palace stood, not far from a city, and directly above him was the window of his wife's chamber. Just then one of her household¹ happened to look out and see him, and told the good news to the Princess Buddir al Buddoor. She could not believe it to be true, and, hastening to the window, opened it herself with a noise which made Aladdin look up. Seeing the Princess, he saluted² her with an air that expressed his joy, and in a moment he had entered by a private³ door and was in⁴ her arms.

After shedding⁵ tears of joy, they sat down, and Aladdin said: "I beg of you, Princess, to tell me what had become of an old lamp which stood upon a shelf in my robing chamber."

"Alas!" answered the Princess, "I was afraid our misfortune might be owing⁶ to that lamp; and what grieves me most is that I have been the cause⁷ of it. I was foolish enough to change the old lamp for a new one, and the next morning I found myself in this unknown⁸ country, which I am told is Africa."

"Princess," said Aladdin, stopping her, "you have told me all by telling me we are in Africa. Now, only tell me where the old lamp is."

"The African magician," answered the Princess, "carries it carefully wrapped up in his bosom. This I know, because one day he pulled it out before me, and showed it to me in triumph."⁹

¹ Household, 家人 (此指婢僕). ² Saluted, 作禮; 向 . . . 行禮.
³ Private, 祕. ⁴ In her arms, 在彼懷抱之中; 爲彼所抱持. ⁵ Shedding tears of joy, 樂極而悲, 因之流淚. ⁶ Owing to, 因; 因 . . . 而生.
⁷ Cause, 原動力. ⁸ Unknown country, 曩所未知之地; 生疏之地.
⁹ Triumph, 得意; 因勝利而志得意滿.

Aladdin quickly formed and carried out a plan to leave the palace, disguise¹ himself, buy of a druggist² a certain powder³ which he named,⁴ and return to the Princess. He told her what she must do to help his purpose. When the magician should come to the palace, she must assume⁵ a friendly manner and ask him to sup with her. "Before he leaves," said Aladdin, "ask him to exchange cups with you. This he will gladly do, and you must give him the cup containing this powder. On drinking it he will instantly fall⁶ asleep, and we shall obtain the lamp, whose slaves will do⁷ our bidding, and bear us and the palace back to the capital of China."

It was not long before the magician came to the palace, and the Princess did exactly as Aladdin had bidden her. When, at the end of the evening, she offered her guest the drugged⁸ cup, he drank it, out of honor to her, to⁹ the last drop, and fell back lifeless¹⁰ on the sofa.

Aladdin was quickly called and said: "Princess, retire, and let me be left alone while I try to take you back to China as speedily as you were brought thence.¹¹" On the dead body of the magician he found the lamp, carefully wrapped and hidden in his garments. Aladdin rubbed it, and the genie stood before him.

"Genie," said Aladdin, "I command thee to bear this palace instantly back to the place whence it was brought hither.¹²" The genie bowed his head and departed.¹³ In a moment the palace was again in China, and its removal

¹ Disguise, 喬裝; 改換服色. ² Druggist, 藥材商; 藥劑師. ³ Powder, 藥粉. ⁴ Named, 指名; 指索. ⁵ Assume a friendly manner, 佯作和藹之態. ⁶ Fall asleep, 熟睡. ⁷ Do our bidding, 依吾人之命令而行. ⁸ Drugged cup, 有藥之杯; 入以毒藥之飲料. ⁹ To the last drop, 盡; 乾. ¹⁰ Lifeless, 無生氣; 昏倒; 死. ¹¹ Thence (作 from that place 解), 自彼處. ¹² Hither (作 to this place 解); 至此處. ¹³ Departed, 離; 去.

was felt only by two little shocks,¹ the one when it was lifted up, the other when it was set down, and both in a very short space² of time.

Early the next day the Sultan was looking from his window and mourning³ his daughter's fate.⁴ He could not believe his eyes when first he saw her palace standing in its old place. But as he looked more closely he was convinced, and joy came to his heart instead of the grief that had filled it. At once he ordered a horse and was on his way, when Aladdin, looking from the hall of twenty-four windows, saw him coming, and hastened to help him dismount.⁵ He was brought at once to the Princess, and both wept tears of joy. When the strange events had been partly⁶ explained, he said to Aladdin:

"My son, be not displeased at the harshness⁷ I showed towards you. It rose from a father's love, and therefore you will forgive it."

"Sire," said Aladdin, "I have not the least reason to complain of your conduct, since you did nothing but what your duty⁸ required. This wicked magician, the basest⁹ of men, was the sole¹⁰ cause of all."

VII

Only once again were Aladdin and his palace in danger from magic arts. A younger brother of the African magician learned of what had happened, and, in¹¹ the guise of a holy woman,¹² Fatima,¹³ whom he killed that he might

¹ Shocks, 震動. ² Space of time, 時間. ³ Mourning, 悲傷; 悲痛.
⁴ Fate, 運命; 遭遇. ⁵ Dismount, 下馬. ⁶ Partly, 一部分; 不完全; 半.
⁷ Harshness, 嚴厲; 苛暴. ⁸ Duty, 天職. ⁹ Basest, 最卑劣; 最下賤.
¹⁰ Sole, 唯一; 獨一無二. ¹¹ In the guise of, 喬裝; 假扮. ¹² Holy woman, 女尼; 女道士. ¹³ Fatima (fāt/i-má), 人名.

pretend to take her place, came to live in the palace. The Princess, thinking him really the holy woman, heeded all that he said. One day, admiring the beauty of the hall, he told her that nothing could surpass¹ it if only a roc's² egg were hung from the middle of the dome.³ "A roc," he said, "is a bird of enormous⁴ size which lives at the summit⁵ of Mount⁶ Caucasus.⁷ The architect⁸ who built your palace can get you an egg."

When the Princess told Aladdin of her desire, he summoned the genie of the lamp and said to him:

"Genie, I command thee in⁹ the name of this lamp, bring a roc's egg to be hung in the middle of the dome of the hall of the palace."

No sooner were these words spoken than the hall shook¹⁰ as if ready to fall, and the genie told Aladdin that he had asked him to bring his own master¹¹ and hang him up in the midst of the hall; it was enough to reduce¹² Aladdin and the Princess and the palace all to ashes; but he should be spared,¹³ because the request had really come from another. Then he told Aladdin who was the true author¹⁴ of it, and warned him against the pretended Fatima, whom till¹⁵ then he had not known as the brother of the African magician. Aladdin saw his danger, and on that very day killed his wicked enemy with the dagger¹⁶ which was meant to be his own death.

¹ Surpass, 勝過; 超越. ² Roc, 大鵬. ³ Dome, 圓頂; 屋頂. ⁴ Enormous, 極大. ⁵ Summit, 山頂. ⁶ Mount, 山. ⁷ Caucasus (kô/kâ-sûs), 高加索 (山系之名, 在亞洲西北部). ⁸ Architect, 建築師; 建築者. ⁹ In the name of, 以 . . . 之名義; 藉 . . . 之力. ¹⁰ Shook, 震動. ¹¹ Master, 主人. ¹² Reduce . . . to ashes, 使 . . . 化爲灰燼. reduce, 使變成 (凡使大者小, 使強者弱, 曰 reduce). ashes, 灰. ¹³ Spared, 饒恕; 微免. ¹⁴ Author, 主謀者. ¹⁵ Till then = till that time. ¹⁶ Dagger, 短刀; 匕首.

Thus was Aladdin delivered¹ from the two brothers who were magicians. Within a few years the Sultan died at a good old age, and, as he left no male children, the Princess Buddir al Buddoor came² to the throne, and she and Aladdin reigned³ together many years.

¹ Delivered from, 得免於. ² Came to the throne, 嗣位.
³ Reigned, 統治; 御宇.

VII

THE STORY OF ALI COGIA, A MERCHANT OF BAGDAD

In the reign of the Caliph Haroun al Raschid there lived at Bagdad a merchant who was neither rich nor poor, but lived in¹ comfort in the house that had been his father's. For three successive² nights he had a strange dream,³ which gave⁴ cause to the events of this story. An old man appeared to him, and with a severe⁵ look reproached⁶ him for not having made a pilgrimage⁷ to Mecca.⁸ The vision,⁹ seen three times, gave him much trouble. He knew that, as a good Mussulman,¹⁰ he ought to make the pilgrimage; but he had supposed¹¹ that his charities¹² and other good¹³ works might excuse¹⁴ him. Yet the dream pricked¹⁵ his conscience so sorely¹⁶ that he made¹⁷ up his mind to go. Therefore¹⁸ he let¹⁹ his house, and sold all of his goods except a few which he thought he could turn²⁰ to better profit at Mecca. After this was done, he had a thousand pieces of gold which he wanted to leave behind him in some place²¹ of safety.

¹ In comfort, 安逸; 適意. ² Successive, 接連; 相繼. ³ Dream, 夢.
⁴ Gave cause to, 發生; 釀成. ⁵ Severe look, 嚴厲之容貌. ⁶ Re-
proached, 責; 責備. ⁷ Pilgrimage, 謁聖地 (猶吾國朝山進香之類).
⁸ Mecca (mëk/ä), 亞刺伯地名 (爲穆罕默德降生之地, 回教徒所奉爲聖
地, 不遠千里而往謁者也). ⁹ Vision, 幻象; 夢中所見之事. ¹⁰ Mussul-
man, 回教徒. ¹¹ Supposed, 以爲; 意料. ¹² Charities, 慈善事業.
¹³ Good works, 好事. ¹⁴ Excuse, 免. ¹⁵ Pricked his conscience, 刺
激其天良. ¹⁶ Sorely, 痛苦; 烈. ¹⁷ Made up his mind, 定意.
¹⁸ Therefore, 因此; 是以. ¹⁹ Let, 租出. ²⁰ Turn to better profit, 較
可獲利; 可得厚利. ²¹ Place of safety, 穩妥之所.

This was the plan which, upon careful thought, he adopted:¹ he took a good large jar² and put the thousand pieces of gold into it, and covered them over with olives.³ When he had closed the mouth of the jar he carried it to a merchant, one of his best friends, and said to him:

“You know, brother, that in a few days I mean to depart with the caravan⁴ on my pilgrimage to Mecca. I beg the favor of you to take⁵ charge of a jar of olives, and keep it for me till I return.”

The merchant promised to do this, and in the kindest manner said: “Here, take the key of my warehouse and set your jar where you please. You shall find it there when you return.”

When the caravan started, Ali Cogia, riding a camel loaded with the goods he thought fit to carry, started with it. He arrived safe at Mecca, performed all his religious⁶ duties at the temple, to which the faithful go every year in throngs,⁷ and then exposed⁸ his goods for sale. Two merchants soon came⁹ by. They purchased¹⁰ nothing, but as they walked away Ali Cogia heard one of them say to the other:

“If this merchant knew what profit these goods would bring him at Cairo¹¹ he would carry them thither¹² and not sell them here, though this is a good mart.¹³”

Ali Cogia had often heard of the beauties of Egypt,¹⁴ and resolved to go to Cairo. This he did, and with the profits

¹ Adopted, 採取; 擇定. ² Jar, 瓶; 罐. ³ Olives, 橄欖. ⁴ Caravan (kār/ā-vān), 旅行隊 (亞洲西北各國之商人行客, 因防盜, 往往結隊而行). ⁵ Take charge of, 保管. ⁶ Religious, 宗教上之 ⁷ Throngs, 羣; 大隊. ⁸ Exposed, 出; 陳列. ⁹ Came by, 走過. ¹⁰ Purchased, 購; 買. ¹¹ Cairo (kī/rō), 開羅 (地名, 在非洲埃及尼羅河東岸). ¹² Thither (作 to that place 解), 至彼處. ¹³ Mart, 市場; 交易場所. ¹⁴ Egypt (ē/jipt), 埃及國.

from his sales went to Damascus.¹ Having once begun to travel it was an easy matter to keep on, and for seven years he went from place to place, even as far as Hindustan.² Then he resolved to return to Bagdad.

All this time his friend, with whom he had left the jar of olives, never thought of him nor of them.³ One evening the merchant was supping with his family when the talk happened to fall upon olives, and his wife, wishing to eat some, said she had not tasted⁴ any for a long while.

"Now you speak of olives," said the merchant, "you put⁵ me in mind of a jar which Ali Cogia left with me seven years ago, when he went to Mecca, putting it himself into my warehouse. What is become of him I know not. When the caravan came back, they told me he was gone for Egypt. Certainly he must be dead by this time, and we may eat the olives if they prove good. Give me a plate and a candle;⁶ I will go and fetch some of them, that we may taste them."

"Pray, husband," said his wife, "do⁷ not commit so base a deed. They were given to you in trust,⁸ and if Ali Cogia should return, as I am sure he will, what will he think of your honor?⁹ Besides, the olives must be moldy¹⁰ after these seven years. I beg you to let¹¹ them alone."

But the merchant would not listen. When he came to the warehouse and opened the jar, he found the olives moldy; but, to see if all were moldy to the bottom,¹² he

¹ Damascus (dā-mās/kās), 大馬色 (地名, 在亞洲西北敘利亞 [Syria] 境內). ² Hindustan (hīn-dōō-stān/), 身毒 (印度). ³ Them (指 olives). ⁴ Tasted, 嘗味; 吃. ⁵ Put me in mind of, 使我憶及. ⁶ Candle, 蠟燭. ⁷ Do not commit so base a deed, 勿作如此下流之事. ⁸ Trust, 託付. ⁹ Honor, 名譽. ¹⁰ Moldy, 腐爛; 霉爛. ¹¹ Let them alone, 任其自然; 聽之; 勿觸之. ¹² Bottom, 底.

turned some of them upon the plate, and in shaking the jar some of the gold tumbled out.

Now the merchant loved gold dearly,¹ and, looking² deeper into the jar, he saw that only the top had been covered with olives, and that all below it was coin.³ He put the olives directly back, covered the jar, and returned to his wife.

"Indeed, wife," said he, "you were right, the olives are all moldy; but I have left them just as I found them, and if Ali Cogia ever does return he will not see that they have been touched."

"I wish you had not meddled⁴ with them at all," said his wife. "God grant that no mischief⁵ may come⁶ of it."

The merchant spent most of that night thinking how he might take Ali Cogia's gold without any risk⁷ of being found⁸ out. In the morning he went and bought some olives of that year, and then, secretly emptying the jar of the gold and the moldy olives, filled it with the new ones, covered it up, and put it in the place where Ali Cogia had left it.

In about a month the traveler arrived at Bagdad. One of the first things he did there was to go to the merchant for his jar of olives, expressing his hope that it had not been in⁹ the way. The merchant assured him that he had been glad to do this little service.¹⁰ "Here is the key of my warehouse," he said, "go and fetch your jar; you will find it where you left it."

When Ali Cogia carried the jar to his inn and turned it over, nothing but olives rolled out of it. He knew not what to think. For some time he neither spoke nor moved.

¹ Dearly, 極; 甚. ² Looking deeper into the jar, 向罐中細視之. ³ Coin, 金錢; 錢幣. ⁴ Meddled with, 干涉. ⁵ Mischief, 禍患. ⁶ Come of = come out of = come from. ⁷ Risk, 危險. ⁸ Found out, 察覺; 察出. ⁹ In the way, 當路; 爲障礙; 使人不便. ¹⁰ Service, 事務.

Then, lifting up his hands and eyes to heaven, he exclaimed: "Is it possible that a man whom I took¹ for my friend could be guilty² of such baseness?³"

Returning at once to the merchant, he told him that, besides the olives, he had left a thousand pieces of gold in the jar. "If you had need of them, and have used them in trade, they are at⁴ your service till you wish to pay them back; only⁵ give me a written⁶ word to say that you will do so."

The merchant was ready with an angry answer: "You left a jar, found it in its place, and took it away. Now you come and ask me for a thousand pieces of gold. I wonder that you do not demand diamonds or pearls. Begone about your business."

The noise of their quarrel drew other merchants to the spot, and Ali Cogia, seeing that he gained nothing by talk, left his unfaithful friend, telling him that he must appear for trial⁷ before the cauzee,⁸ an officer⁹ of the law whose summons must be obeyed by every good Mussulman. "With¹⁰ all my heart," said the merchant; "we shall soon see who is in the wrong."

When the trial took place, the cauzee, after hearing the merchant's defense¹¹ of himself, asked if there were any witnesses,¹² and, finding there were none, dismissed the prisoner for want of evidence.¹³ The merchant was in triumph over the verdict,¹⁴ but Ali Cogia would not let the

¹ Took for, 以爲. ² Guilty of, 犯. ³ Baseness, 卑劣; 下賤; 不名譽之行爲. ⁴ At your service, 任憑使用; 聽君應用. ⁵ Only, 只要. ⁶ Written word, 筆據; 借據. ⁷ Trial, 審判. ⁸ Cauzee (kô/zô), 或作 cazi, cauzi, cazeo, kazi, 回教國之高官. ⁹ Officer of the law, 法官. ¹⁰ With all my heart, 極願; 甚願. ¹¹ Defense, 辯白; 辯護. ¹² Witnesses, 證人. ¹³ Evidence, 證據. ¹⁴ Verdict, 判詞.

matter drop¹ so easily. He lost no time in drawing² up a petition to the Caliph that he should try the merchant himself, and received an answer that the trial would take place on the next day.

That same evening the Caliph, with his Grand Vizier Giafar³ and Mesroun,⁴ the chief⁵ of the attendants,⁶ went disguised through the town, as he was wont⁷ to do. Hearing a noise as he passed the entrance⁸ to a little court,⁹ he looked in and saw ten or twelve children at play in the moonlight. Curious to know what they were doing, he sat down on a stone¹⁰ bench near by, and heard one of the foremost¹¹ of the children say, "Let us play¹² at the cauzee."

The affair of Ali Cogia and the merchant had made¹³ a great noise in Bagdad, and the children, who had heard of it, took¹⁴ to the game with eagerness, and agreed on the part¹⁵ each was to act.¹⁶ The boy who proposed the sport was to be the cauzee, and, when he had taken his seat with much gravity,¹⁷ another, as an officer of the court,¹⁸ presented two boys before him, one as Ali Cogia and the other as the accused¹⁹ merchant.

The pretended²⁰ cauzee then asked the pretended Ali Cogia what charge²¹ he had to bring against the merchant. After making a low bow, he told his story, and begged the cauzee to save²² him the loss of so much money. Then the

¹ Drop, 罷; 了. ² Drawing up a petition, 作一請願書. ³ Giafar (jī-ā-fār'), 人名. ⁴ Mesroun (mēs-rōōn'), 人名. ⁵ Chief, 領袖; 總. ⁶ Attendants, 侍者; 侍從. ⁷ Wont, 慣. ⁸ Entrance, 進門處; 門口. ⁹ Court, 天井; 院子. ¹⁰ Stone bench, 石凳. ¹¹ Foremost, 處於領袖人地位者; 年最長者. ¹² Play at, 假作. ¹³ Made a great noise, 喧傳. ¹⁴ Took to the game, 爲此戲. ¹⁵ Part, 戲劇中扮演各人之脚色. ¹⁶ Act, 扮演. ¹⁷ Gravity, 莊重; 嚴肅. ¹⁸ Court, 法庭; 公堂. ¹⁹ Accused, 被控. ²⁰ Pretended, 假; 假裝. ²¹ Charge, 陳訴罪狀. ²² Save, 救; 挽回.

pretended merchant was called, and made the same defense which the real merchant had made before the real cauzee. When he finished he offered¹ to take² his oath that all he had said was true.

"Not so fast," replied the pretended cauzee; "before you come to your oath, I should be glad to see the jar of olives. Ali Cogia," said he to the boy who acted Ali's part, "have you brought the jar?"

"No," replied he.

"Then go and fetch it at once," said the other.

The pretended Ali Cogia went and soon returned with the jar, which he declared to be the one he had left with the merchant, and the merchant was called upon to say that it was the same. When the cover was taken off the pretended cauzee said:

"They are fine olives; let me taste them." Then, pretending to eat some, he added: "They are excellent,³ but I cannot think that olives will keep for seven years and be so good; therefore send for some olive merchants, and let me hear what is their opinion."

Two boys, as olive merchants, then appeared. "Are you olive merchants?" said the sham⁴ cauzee. "Tell me how long olives will keep fit to eat."

"Sir," replied the two merchants, "let us take what care we may, they will hardly be worth anything the third year; for then they have neither taste⁵ nor color."

"If that be so," answered the cauzee, "look into that jar and tell me how long it is since those olives were put into it."

¹ Offered, 自願. ² Take his oath, 立誓. ³ Excellent, 很好; 絕佳.
⁴ Sham, 假. ⁵ Taste, 味.

The two merchants pretended to examine and taste the olives, and told the cauzee they were new and good. "You are mistaken," said the young cauzee; "Ali Cogia says he put them into the jar seven years ago."

"Sir," replied the merchants, "we can assure you they are of this year's growth,¹ and we will maintain there is not a merchant in Bagdad but will say the same."

The pretended merchant would have objected² to this evidence, but the young cauzee would not hear him. "Hold³ your tongue," said he, "you are a rogue.⁴ Let him be impaled.⁵" Then the children ended their play, clapping⁶ their hands with joy, and leading the feigned⁷ criminal⁸ away to execution.⁹

The Caliph Haroun al Raschid was perfectly delighted with the shrewdness¹⁰ and good sense¹¹ of the boy cauzee in an affair which was to be tried before himself the next day. As he rose from the bench he said to the Grand Vizier: "Could I possibly give a better sentence¹² to-morrow?"

"I think not, Commander of the Faithful," replied Giafar, "if the case is as the children have played it."

"Take notice, then, of this house," said the Caliph, "and bring the boy to me to-morrow, that he may try this cause¹³ in my presence, and also order the cauzee who acquitted¹⁴ the merchant to attend¹⁵ and learn his duty from a child. Take care, likewise, to bid Ali Cogia bring his jar of olives with him, and let two olive merchants attend."

¹ Growth, 出產; 長成; 成熟. ² Objected to, 不承認; 抗辯; 辯駁.
³ Hold your tongue, 勿作聲; 毋多言. ⁴ Rogue, 無賴. ⁵ Impaled, 以杖刺死.
⁶ Clapping their hands with joy, 歡然拍手. ⁷ Feigned, 假.
⁸ Criminal, 犯人. ⁹ Execution, 行刑; 正法. ¹⁰ Shrewdness, 幹練; 慧慧.
¹¹ Sense, 意識; 見識. ¹² Sentence, 判詞. ¹³ Cause = case, 訴訟事件.
¹⁴ Acquitted, 免除罪名; 釋放. ¹⁵ Attend, 到; 到案.

The next day the Vizier went to the house where he thought the boy lived, and asked¹ for the master, and as he was away from home his wife appeared, thickly² veiled. The Vizier asked if she had any children; she answered that he had three, and called them. The eldest declared himself to be the one who had played the *cauzee* the night before.

"Then, my lad,³" said the Vizier, "come along with me; the Commander of the Faithful wants to see you."

This filled the mother with alarm, but the Vizier assured her that no harm was meant, and that he would bring the boy back within an hour. But before she let him go, she dressed him as she thought he should be dressed to appear before the Caliph.

When the Vizier and the boy reached the court, the Caliph saw that he was much abashed,⁴ and to set him at his ease said: "Come to me, child, and tell me if it was you that judged between Ali Cogia and the merchant. I heard the trial, and am very well pleased with you."

The boy answered modestly⁵ that it was he.

"Well, my son," replied the Caliph, "come and sit down by me, and you shall see the true Ali Cogia and the true merchant."

The Caliph then took him by the hand and seated him on the throne by his side, and asked for the two merchants. When they had come forward and bowed their heads to the carpet, he said to them:

"Plead⁶ each of you your cause before this child, who will hear and do⁷ you justice, and if he should be⁸ at a loss I will assist⁹ him."

¹ Asked for the master, 欲見主人. ² Thickly veiled, 以厚巾覆面
³ Lad, 童子. ⁴ Abashed, 羞怯. ⁵ Modestly, 謙下. ⁶ Plead, 陳訴.
⁷ Do you justice, 秉公判斷; 還汝以公道. ⁸ Be at a loss 不知所爲;
 不知所措. ⁹ Assist, 助理.

Ali Cogia and the merchant pleaded one after the other; but when the merchant proposed to take his oath, as before, the child said: "It is too soon; it is proper that we should see the jar of olives."

When Ali Cogia had placed the jar at the Caliph's feet and opened it, the Caliph looked at the olives, tasted one and gave another to the boy. Then the merchants were called and reported¹ the olives good, and of² that year. The boy told them that Ali Cogia declared it was seven years since he had put them up, and they made the same answer as the children who had acted their parts the night before.

Though the wretch who was accused saw that his case was lost,³ he tried to say something more in his defense. But the child, instead of ordering him to be impaled, looked at the Caliph and said: "Commander of the Faithful, this is no⁴ jesting matter; it is your majesty that must condemn⁵ him to death, and not I, though I did it yesterday in play."

The Caliph, fully satisfied of the merchant's crime, handed⁶ him over to the ministers⁷ of justice to be impaled. Before the execution took place he confessed where he had concealed⁸ the thousand pieces of gold, and they were restored to Ali Cogia.

The just monarch, then turning to the cauzee, bade him learn of the child how to do his duty more carefully, and, embracing the boy, sent him home with a purse of a hundred pieces of gold.

¹ Reported, 報告; 說. ² Of that year, 當年之物. ³ Lost, 失敗.
⁴ No jesting matter, 非遊戲之事. ⁵ Condemn . . . to death, 宣告死刑. condemn, 定罪; 辦罪. ⁶ Handed, 交. ⁷ Ministers of justice 法官; 司法官. ⁸ Concealed, 隱藏; 藏匿.

VIII

THE HISTORY OF ALI¹ BABA, AND OF THE FORTY ROBBERS² KILLED BY ONE SLAVE

I

THERE once lived in a town of Persia two brothers, one named Cassim³ and the other Ali Baba. Their father divided⁴ his small property⁵ equally⁶ between them. Cassim married a very rich wife, and became a wealthy⁷ merchant. Ali Baba married a woman as poor as himself, and lived by cutting wood and bringing it upon three asses into the town to sell.

One day, when Ali Baba had cut just enough wood in the forest to load his asses, he noticed far off a great cloud of dust. As it drew nearer, he saw that it was made by a body of horsemen, whom he suspected to be robbers. Leaving the asses, he climbed a large tree which grew on a high rock, and had branches thick enough to hide him completely while he saw what passed beneath. The troop, forty⁹ in number, all well mounted and armed,¹⁰ came to the foot of the rock on which the tree stood, and here dismounted. Each man unbridled¹¹ his horse, tied him to a shrub,¹² and hung about his neck a bag of corn. Then

¹ Ali Baba (ā/lā bā/bā), 人名. ² Robbers, 盜; 強盜. ³ Cassim (kā/sīm), 人名. ⁴ Divided, 分. ⁵ Property, 財產; 產業. ⁶ Equally, 平均; 相等. ⁷ Wealthy, 富 (此字與 rich 微有不同; rich 祇言有財, wealthy 則兼有“興盛”之意). ⁸ Cloud of dust, 煙塵; 塵起如雲. ⁹ Forty in number, 爲數四十; 計四十人. ¹⁰ Armed, 攜帶軍械; 武裝. ¹¹ Unbridled, 卸去轡頭. ¹² Shrub, 矮樹; 灌木.

each of them took off his saddlebag,¹ which from its weight seemed to Ali Baba full of gold and silver. One, whom he took to be their captain,² came under the tree in which Ali Baba was concealed; and, making his way through some shrubs, spoke the words, "Open, Sesame."³ As soon as the captain of the robbers said this, a door opened in the rock, and after he had made all his troop enter before him, he followed them, when the door shut again of⁴ itself.

The robbers stayed⁵ some time within, and Ali Baba, fearful of being caught,⁶ remained in the tree. At last the door opened again, and the captain came out first, and stood to see all the troop pass by him. Then Ali Baba heard him make the door close by saying, "Shut, Sesame." Every man at once bridled⁷ his horse, fastened his wallet,⁸ and mounted again. When the captain saw them all ready, he put himself at their head, and they returned the way they had come.

Ali Baba watched them out of sight, and then waited some time before coming down. Wishing to see whether the captain's words would have the same effect⁹ if he should speak them, he found the door hidden in the shrubs, stood before it, and said: "Open, Sesame." Instantly the door flew¹⁰ wide open.

Instead of a dark, dismal¹¹ cavern,¹² Ali Baba was surprised to see a large chamber, well lighted from the top,

¹ Saddlebag, 鞍囊 (懸於馬旁以置物者, 古時騎者用之). ² Captain, 領袖. ³ Sesame (sēs/a-mê), 胡麻; 芝麻 (Open, Sesame, 乃盜所用之咒語). ⁴ Of itself, 自動, 不由人力. ⁵ Stayed, 逗留. ⁶ Caught, 捉獲; 捕獲. ⁷ Bridled, 上轡頭; 施銜勒. ⁸ Wallet, 行囊. ⁹ Effect, 效力. ¹⁰ Flew wide open, 大開; 洞開. ¹¹ Dismal, 黑暗; 使人鬱悶. ¹² Cavern, 穴.

and in it all sorts of provisions,¹ rich bales² of silk, stuff, brocade³ and carpeting,⁴ gold and silver ingots⁵ in great heaps, and money in bags.

Ali Baba went boldly into the cave, and collected⁶ as much of the gold coin, which was in bags, as he thought his asses could carry. When he had loaded them with the bags, he laid wood over them so that they could not be seen, and, passing out of the door for the last time, stood before it and said: "Shut, Sesame." The door closed of itself, and he made⁷ the best of his way to town.

When he reached home, he carefully closed the gate of his little yard,⁸ threw off the wood, and carried the bags into the house. They were emptied before his wife, and the great heap of gold dazzled her eyes. Then he told her the whole adventure, and warned her, above⁹ all things, to keep it secret.

Ali Baba would not let her take the time to count it out as she wished, but said: "I will dig¹⁰ a hole and bury¹¹ it."

"But let us know as nearly as may be," she said, "how much we have. I will borrow¹² a small measure,¹³ and measure it, while you dig a hole."

Away she ran to the wife of Cassim, who lived near by, and asked for a measure. The sister-in-law,¹⁴ knowing Ali Baba's poverty, was curious to learn what sort of grain his wife wished to measure¹⁵ out, and artfully¹⁶ managed¹⁷ to

¹ Provisions, 食料; 糧食. ² Bales, 包; 捆. ³ Brocade, 縐金或堆花之綢. ⁴ Carpeting, 地毯料; 地毯. ⁵ Ingots, 錠; 元寶. ⁶ Collected 收集. ⁷ Made the best of his way to, 趕緊回至. ⁸ Yard, 天井. ⁹ Above all things, 最要. ¹⁰ Dig, 掘. ¹¹ Bury, 埋; 藏. . . . 於地中. ¹² Borrow, 借 (此字與 lend 不同, lend 謂借出, borrow 謂借入). ¹³ Measure, 秤; 衡. . . . 多少. ¹⁴ Sister-in-law, 姨; 弟婦; 妯娌. ¹⁵ Measure out, 量出; 計量. ¹⁶ Artfully, 狡滑; 詭詐. ¹⁷ Managed, 設計; 設法.

put some suet¹ in the bottom of the measure before she handed it over. Ali Baba's wife wanted to show how careful she was in small matters and, after she had measured the gold, hurried back, even² while her husband was burying it, with the borrowed measure, never noticing that a coin had stuck³ to its bottom.

"What," said Cassim's wife, as soon as her sister-in-law had left her, "has Ali Baba gold in such plenty that he measures it? Whence has he all this wealth?" And envy⁴ possessed her breast.

When Cassim came home, she said to him: "Cassim, you think yourself rich, but Ali Baba is much richer. He does not count his money; he measures it." Then she explained to him how she had found it out, and they looked together at the piece of money, which was so old that they could not tell in what prince's⁵ reign it was coined.⁶

Cassim, since marrying the rich widow,⁷ had never treated Ali Baba as a brother, but neglected⁸ him. Now, instead of being pleased, he was filled with a base envy. Early in the morning, after a sleepless⁹ night, he went to him and said: "Ali Baba, you pretend to be wretchedly¹⁰ poor, and yet you measure gold. My wife found this at the bottom of the measure you borrowed yesterday."

Ali Baba saw that there was no use of trying to conceal his good fortune, and told the whole story, offering his brother part of the treasure to keep the secret.

¹ Suet (sū/št), 牛油; 羊脂; 膏油. ² Even = at the very time, 同時; 尙在 . . . 之時. ³ Stuck, 粘附; 膠住. ⁴ Envy possessed her breast, 妒忌之心, 充塞胸中; 滿腔妒忌. ⁵ Prince's reign, 朝代. ⁶ Coined, 製成; 鑄造. ⁷ Widow, 寡婦 (Cassim 之妻, 爲再醮婦, 故云). ⁸ Neglected, 輕視; 蔑視. ⁹ Sleepless, 不能成眠. ¹⁰ Wretchedly, 可憐; 不堪.

"I expect as much," replied Cassim haughtily;¹ "but I must know just where this treasure is and how to visit it myself when I choose. Otherwise² I will inform³ against you, and you will lose even what you have now."

Ali Baba told him all he wished to know, even to the words he must speak at the door of the cave.

Cassim rose⁴ before the sun the next morning, and set out for the forest with ten mules⁵ bearing great chests⁶ which he meant to fill. With little trouble he found the rock and the door, and, standing before it, spoke the words, "Open, Sesame." The door opened at once, and when he was within closed upon him. Here indeed were the riches of which his brother had told. He quickly brought as many bags of gold as he could carry to the door of the cavern; but his thoughts were so full of his new wealth, that he could not think of the word that should let him out. Instead of "Sesame," he said, "Open, Barley,⁷" and was much amazed to find that the door remained fast shut. He named several sorts of grain, but still the door would not open.

Cassim had never expected such a disaster,⁸ and was so frightened that the more he tried to recall⁹ the word "Sesame," the more confused¹⁰ his mind became. It was as if he had never heard the word at all. He threw down the bags in his hands, and walked wildly¹¹ up and down, without a thought of the riches lying round about him.

At noon the robbers visited their cave. From afar they saw Cassim's mules straggling¹² about the rock, and gallop-

¹ Haughtily, 傲慢; 驕。 ² Otherwise, 否則。 ³ Inform against, 告發。 ⁴ Rose before the sun, 未明即起。 ⁵ Mules, 騾。 ⁶ Chests, 箱; 大箱。 ⁷ Barley, 大麥。 ⁸ Disaster, 災難; 禍患。 ⁹ Recall, 記憶; 追想。 ¹⁰ Confused, 昏亂; 迷惑。 ¹¹ Wildly, 狂; 亂。 ¹² Straggling, 任意遊行; 散走; 散在。

ed¹ full speed to the cave. Driving the mules out of sight, they went at once, with their naked² sabers in their hands, to the door, which opened as soon as the captain had spoken the proper words before it.

Cassim had heard the noise of the horses' feet, and guessed that the robbers had come. He resolved to make³ one effort for his life. As soon as the door opened, he rushed⁴ out and threw⁵ the leader down, but could not pass the other robbers, who with their scimitars⁶ soon put him to death.

The⁷ first care of the robbers was to examine the cave. They found all the bags Cassim had brought to the door, but did not miss⁸ what Ali Baba had taken. As for Cassim himself, they guessed rightly that, once within, he could not get out again; but how he had managed to learn their secret words that let him in, they could not tell. One thing was certain,—there he was; and to warn all others who might know their secret and follow in Cassim's footsteps,⁹ they agreed to cut his body into four quarters—to hang two on one side and two on the other, within the door of the cave. This they did at once, and leaving the place of their hoards¹⁰ well closed, mounted their horses and set out to attack¹¹ the caravans they might meet.

II

When night came, and Cassim did not return, his wife became very uneasy.¹² She ran to Ali Baba for comfort,

¹ Galloped full speed, 疾馳. ² Naked sabers, 露刃; 出鞘之刀. naked, 裸; 露. saber 或作 sabre, 刀. ³ Make one effort for his life, 奮力逃命. ⁴ Rushed out, 衝出. ⁵ Threw the leader down, 將盜魁撞倒於地. ⁶ Scimitars 或作 simitars (sim/i-térz), 彎刀; 半月形之刀. ⁷ The first care, 最注意之事; 第一注意之事. ⁸ Miss, 遺失. ⁹ Footsteps, 足跡; 覆轍. ¹⁰ Hoards, 藏; 貯物之所. ¹¹ Attack, 襲擊. ¹² Uneasy, 不安.

and he told her that Cassim would certainly think it unwise¹ to enter the town till night² was well advanced. By midnight³ Cassim's wife was still more alarmed, and wept till morning, cursing⁴ her desire to pry⁵ into the affairs of her brother and sister-in-law. In the early day she went again, in tears, to Ali Baba.

He did not wait for her to ask him to go and see what had happened to Cassim, but set out at once for the forest with his three asses. Finding some blood⁶ at the door of the cave, he took⁷ it for an ill omen; but when he had spoken the words, and the door had opened, he was struck⁸ with horror at the dismal sight of his brother's body. He could not leave it there, and hastened within to find something to wrap around it. Laying the body on one of his asses, he covered it with wood. The other two asses he loaded with bags of gold, covering them also with wood as before. Then bidding the door shut, he came away, but stopped some time at the edge⁹ of the forest, that he might not go into the town before night. When he reached home he left the two asses, laden with gold, in his little yard for his wife to unload,¹⁰ and led the other to his sister-in-law's house.

Ali Baba knocked at the door, which was opened by Morgiana,¹¹ a clever slave, full of devices¹² to conquer¹³ difficulties. When he came into the court and unloaded the ass, he took Morgiana aside, and said to her:

¹ Unwise, 不智. ² Night was well advanced, 夜深; 午夜. ³ Mid-night, 半夜. ⁴ Cursing, 咒罵 (“抱怨,” “歸過”之意). ⁵ Pry into, 窺探; 偵伺. ⁶ Blood, 血. ⁷ Took it for an ill omen, 逆料其為不祥之光. ⁸ Struck with horror, 突然為恐怖所襲; 猛吃一驚; 大怖; 戰慄. ⁹ Edge, 邊. ¹⁰ Unload, 卸下. ¹¹ Morgiana (mór-ji-ä/ná), 人名. ¹² Devices, 計策; 方法. ¹³ Conquer difficulties, 剋制困難而勝之; 化險為夷.

"You must observe¹ a strict secrecy. Your master's body is contained in these two panniers.² We must bury him as if he had died³ a natural death. Go now and tell your mistress.⁴ I leave⁵ the matter to your wit and skillful devices."

They placed the body in Cassim's house, and, charging⁶ Morgiana to act well her part, Ali Baba returned home with his ass.

Early the next morning, Morgiana went to a druggist, and asked for a sort of lozenge⁷ used in the most dangerous illness. When he asked her for whom she wanted it, she answered with a sigh:⁸ "My good master Cassim. He can neither eat nor speak." In the evening she went to the same druggist, and with tears in her eyes asked for an essence⁹ given to sick persons for whose life there is little hope. "Alas!" said she, "I am afraid even this will not save my good master."

All that day Ali Baba and his wife were seen going sadly between their house and Cassim's, and in the evening nobody was surprised to hear the shrieks¹⁰ and cries of Cassim's wife and Morgiana, who told everybody that her master was dead.

The next morning at daybreak¹¹ she went to an old cobbler,¹² who was always early at work, and, putting a piece of gold in his hand, said:

¹ Observe a strict secrecy, 嚴守秘密. observe, 守. strict, 嚴.
² Panniers (pän/yérz), 馱筐. ³ Died a natural death, 得病而死; 考終.
⁴ Mistress, 女主人. ⁵ Leave, 託. ⁶ Charging, 命; 囑咐. ⁷ Lozenge (löz/énj), 藥餅. ⁸ Sigh, 長歎; 歎息. ⁹ Essence, 精; 藥精. ¹⁰ Shrieks, 呼號; 號哭. ¹¹ Daybreak, 破曉; 黎明. ¹² Cobbler, 整靴匠; 鞋匠; 皮匠.

"Baba Mustapha, you must bring your sewing¹ tackle and come with me; but I must tell you, I shall blindfold² you when we reach a certain place."

"Oh! oh!" replied he, "you would have me do something against my conscience or my honor."

"God³ forbid!" said Morgiana, putting another piece of gold in his hand; "only come along with me, and fear nothing."

Baba Mustapha went with Morgiana, and at a certain place she bound his eyes with a handkerchief,⁴ which she never unloosed⁵ till they had entered the room of her master's house, where she had put the corpse⁶ together.

"Baba Mustapha," said she, "you must make haste, and sew⁷ the parts of this body together, and when you have done, I will give you another piece of gold."

After Baba Mustapha had finished his task, she blindfolded him again, gave him the third piece of gold she had promised, and, charging⁸ him with secrecy, took him back to the place where she had first bound⁹ his eyes. Taking off the bandage,¹⁰ she watched him till he was out of sight, lest he should return and dog¹¹ her; then she went home.

At Cassim's house she made all things ready for the funeral,¹² which was duly¹³ performed by the imam¹⁴ and other ministers¹⁵ of the mosque. Morgiana, as a slave of the dead man, walked in the procession, weeping, beating

¹ Sewing tackle, 縫具 (指縫線等物). ² Blindfold, 蔽 . . . 之目; 遮 . . . 之眼. ³ God forbid, 上天不容; 天鑒在上 (此敬語, 表明其無意爲此也). ⁴ Handkerchief, 手巾. ⁵ Unloosed, 解開; 解去. ⁶ Corpse, 屍. ⁷ Sew, 縫. ⁸ Charging him with secrecy, 囑其守祕密. ⁹ Bound, 縛. ¹⁰ Bandage, 布帶 (所以束物). ¹¹ Dog, 追隨; 跟從. ¹² Funeral, 殯葬之儀; 出殯; 安葬. ¹³ Duly performed, 遵禮舉行. ¹⁴ Imam 或作 imaun, 又作 imaum (i-mām), 回教之教師; 回教高僧; 老師父. ¹⁵ Ministers, 宗教師.

her breast, and tearing her hair. Cassim's wife stayed at home, uttering¹ doleful cries with the women of the neighborhood, who, according to custom,² came to mourn with her. The whole quarter was filled with sounds of sorrow. Thus the manner of Cassim's death was hushed³ up, and, besides his widow, Ali Baba, and Morgiana, the slave, nobody in the city suspected the cause of it. Three or four days after the funeral, Ali Baba removed his few goods openly to his sister-in-law's house, in which he was to live in⁴ the future; but the money he had taken from the robbers was carried thither by night. As for Cassim's warehouse, Ali Baba put it entirely under⁵ the charge of his eldest son.

III

While all this was going on, the forty robbers again visited their cave in the forest. Great was their surprise to find Cassim's body taken away, with some of their bags of gold.

"We are certainly found out," said the captain; "the body and the money have been taken by some one else who knows our secret. For⁶ our own lives' sake, we must try and find him. What say you, my lads?"⁷

The robbers all agreed that this must be done.

"Well," said the captain, "one of you, the boldest and most skillful, must go to the town, disguised as a stranger, and try if he can hear any talk of the man we killed, and find out where he lived. This matter is so important that the man who undertakes it and fails should suffer⁸ death. What say you?"

¹ Uttering doleful cries, 悲號; 號哭甚悲. ² Custom, 風俗. ³ Hushed up, 隱瞞過去; 秘而不露. ⁴ In the future, 將來; 嗣後. ⁵ Under the charge of, 歸...管理. ⁶ For our own lives' sake, 爲保全我輩自身生命起見. ⁷ Lads, 夥伴; 友. ⁸ Suffer, 受; 罹.

One of the robbers, without waiting to know what the rest might think, started up, and said, "I submit¹ to this condition,² and think it an honor to expose³ my life to serve the troop."

This won great praise from the robber's comrades,⁴ and he disguised himself at once so that nobody could take⁵ him for what he was. Just at daybreak he entered the town, and walked up and down till he came by⁶ chance to Baba Mustapha's stall,⁷ which was always open before any of the shops.

The old cobbler was just going to work when the robber bade⁸ him good morrow, and said:

"Honest man, you begin to work very early; how can one of your age see so well? Even if it were lighter, I question⁹ whether you could see to stitch.¹⁰"

"You do not know me," replied Baba Mustapha; "for old as I am I have excellent eyes. You will not doubt me when I tell you that I sewed the body of a dead man together in a place where I had not so much light as I have now."

"A dead body!" exclaimed the robber, amazed.

"Yes, yes," answered Baba Mustapha; "I see you want to know more, but you shall not."

The robber felt sure that he was on¹¹ the right track. He put a piece of gold into Baba Mustapha's hand, and said to him:

¹ Submit, 服從; 順從; 遵守. ² Condition, 條件. ³ Expose my life to serve the troop, 不惜一己生命之危險以効力於同袍. ⁴ Comrades, 伴侶; 同黨. ⁵ Take him for what he was, 知其爲何許人; 識破其本來面目. ⁶ By chance, 偶然. ⁷ Stall, 路攤; 攤子. ⁸ Bade him good morrow, 向他請早安. good morrow = good morning, 早晨見人問候之語. ⁹ Question, 問 (引申之, 作 "疑惑," "不信" 等解). ¹⁰ Stitch, 縫. ¹¹ On the right track, 不誤; 並未誤入歧路 (意謂已得有線索也). track, 道; 路.

"I do not want to learn your secret, though you could safely trust me with it. The only thing I ask of you is to show me the house where you stitched up the dead body."

"I could not do that," replied Baba Mustapha, "if I would I was taken to a certain place, whence I was led blindfold¹ to the house, and afterwards brought back again in the same manner."

"Well," replied the robber, "you may remember a little of the way that you were led blindfold. Come, let me blind your eyes at the same place. We will walk together, and perhaps you may recall the way. Here is another piece of gold for you."

This was enough to bring² Baba Mustapha to his feet. They soon reached the place where Morgiana had bandaged³ his eyes, and here he was blindfolded again. Baba Mustapha and the robber walked on till they came to Cassim's house, where Ali Baba now lived. Here the old man stopped, and when the thief⁴ pulled off the band,⁵ and found that his guide⁶ could not tell him whose house it was, he let him go. But before he started back for the forest himself, well pleased with what he had learned, he marked⁷ the door with a piece of chalk⁸ which he had ready in his hand.

Soon after this Morgiana came out upon some errand, and when she returned she saw the mark⁹ the robber had made, and stopped to look at it.

"What can this mean?" she said to herself. "Somebody intends¹⁰ my master harm, and in¹¹ any case it is best

¹ Blindfold, 以物蔽目. ² Bring . . . to his feet, 使 . . . 啓身; 使 . . . 行. ³ Bandaged, 縛; 障蔽. ⁴ Thief, 盜; 賊. ⁵ Band, 帶; 可以束物之布條. ⁶ Guide, 引導者; 嚮導. ⁷ Marked, 畫; 作記號; 留痕跡. ⁸ Chalk, 白堊. ⁹ Mark, 記號; 暗號. ¹⁰ Intends my master harm, 意欲不利於我主人; 意欲加害於我主人. ¹¹ In any case, 無論如何.

to guard¹ against the worst." Then she fetched a piece of chalk, and marked two or three doors on each side in the same manner, saying nothing to her master or mistress.

When the robber rejoined² his troop in the forest, and told of his good fortune in meeting the one man that could have helped him, they were all delighted.

"Comrades," said the captain, "we have no time to lose. Let us set off at once, well armed and disguised, enter the town by³ twos, and join⁴ at the great square.⁵ Meanwhile our comrade who has brought us the good news and I will go and find out the house, and decide what had best be done."

Two⁶ by two they entered the town. Last of all went the captain and the spy. When they came to the first of the houses which Morgiana had marked, the spy pointed it out. But the captain noticed that the next door was chalked⁷ in⁸ the same manner, and asked his guide which house it was, that or the first. The guide knew not what answer to make, and was still more puzzled when he and the captain saw five or six houses marked after this same fashion. He assured the captain, with an oath, that he had marked but one, and could not tell who chalked the rest, nor could he say at which house the cobbler had stopped.

There was nothing to do but to join the other robbers, and tell them to go back to the cave. Here they were told why they had all returned, and the guide was declared by

¹ Guard against, 防; 謹防. ² Rejoined, 再會; 與...復會. ³ By twos, 每兩人作一起. ⁴ Join, 會合; 會集. ⁵ Square, 位於衢路間公用之隙地; 四面有瓦屋環繞之方場. ⁶ Two by two, 兩兩. ⁷ Chalked, 以白堊爲記號. ⁸ In "the same manner" = after the same fashion, 照式; 同一式樣.

all to be¹ worthy of death. Indeed, he condemned himself, owning² that he ought to have been more careful, and prepared to receive the stroke³ which was to cut off his head.

The safety of the troop still demanded⁴ that the second comer⁵ to the cave should be found, and another of the gang⁶ offered to try it, with the same penalty⁷ if he should fail. Like the other robber, he found out Baba Mustapha, and, through him, the house, which he marked, in a place remote⁸ from sight, with red chalk.

But nothing could escape Morgiana's eyes, and when she went out, not long after, and saw the red chalk, she argued⁹ with herself as before, and marked the other houses near by in the same place and manner.

The robber, when he told his comrades what he had done, prided¹⁰ himself on his carefulness, and the captain and all the troop thought they must succeed this time. Again they entered the town by twos; but when the robber and his captain came to the street, they found the same trouble. The captain was enraged,¹¹ and the robber as much confused as the former guide had been. Thus the captain and his troop went back again to the cave, and the robber who had failed willingly gave himself up to death.

IV

The captain could¹² not afford to lose any more of his brave fellows, and decided to take¹³ upon himself the task

¹ Be worthy of, 應該; 當. ² Owning, 承認. ³ Stroke, 擊 (意謂刀擊也). ⁴ Demanded, 須; 必須. ⁵ Comer, 來人; 來者. ⁶ Gang, 賊黨; 竊盜. ⁷ Penalty, 懲罰. ⁸ Remote from sight, 不易爲人所見; 尋常人所不見. remote, 遠. ⁹ Argued with herself, 心中暗想. argued, 辯論. ¹⁰ Prided himself on his carefulness, 自矜其用意之周密. ¹¹ Enraged, 大怒. ¹² Could not afford, 不能堪. ¹³ Take upon himself, 親自擔任.

in which two had failed. Like the others, he went to Baba Mustapha, and was shown the house. Unlike them he put no mark on it, but studied¹ it carefully and passed it so often that he could not possibly mistake it.

When he returned to the troop; who were waiting for him in the cave, he said:

“Now, comrades, nothing can prevent our full revenge,² as I am certain of the house. As I returned I thought of a way to do our work, but if any one thinks of a better, let him speak.”

He told them his plan, and, as they thought it good, he ordered them to go into the villages about, and buy nineteen mules, with thirty-eight large leather jars, one full of oil, and the others empty. Within two or three days they returned with the mules and the jars, and as the mouths of the jars were rather too narrow³ for the captain's purpose, he caused them to be widened.⁴ Having put one of his men into each jar, with the weapons⁵ which he thought fit, and having a seam⁶ wide enough open for each man to breathe, he rubbed the jars on the outside with oil from the full vessel.⁷

Thus prepared they set out for the town, the nineteen mules loaded with the thirty-seven robbers in jars, and the jar of oil, with the captain as their driver.⁸ When he reached Ali Baba's door, he found Ali Baba sitting there taking a little fresh⁹ air after his supper. The captain stopped his mules, and said:

“I have brought some oil a great way to sell at to-morrow's market;¹⁰ and it is now so late that I do not know

¹ Studied, 攷察. ² Revenge, 報仇. ³ Narrow, 狹. ⁴ Widened, 改闊. ⁵ Weapons, 武器; 軍械. ⁶ Seam, 縫. ⁷ Vessel, 可盛流質之器 (指 jar). ⁸ Driver, 御者; 驛夫. ⁹ Fresh air, 新鮮空氣; 清氣.
¹⁰ Market, 市集.

where to lodge.¹ Will you do me the favor to let me pass the night with you?"

Though Ali Baba had seen the captain in the forest, and had heard him speak, he could not know him in the disguise of an oil merchant, and bade him welcome. He opened his gates for the mules to go into the yard, and ordered a slave to put them in a stable and feed them when they were unloaded, and then called Morgiana to get a good supper for his guest. After supper he charged² her afresh³ to take good care of the stranger, and said to her:

"To-morrow morning I intend to go to the bath before⁴ day; take care to have my bathing⁵ linen ready; give it to Abdalla⁶" (which was his slave's name), "and make me some good broth⁷ against⁸ my return." After this he went to bed.

In the meantime the captain of the robbers went into the yard, and took off the lid of each jar, and told his people what they must do. To each, in⁹ turn, he said:

"As soon as I throw some stones out of the chamber window where I lie, do not fail to come out, and I will join you at once."

Then he went into the house, and Morgiana showed him his chamber, where he soon put¹⁰ out the light, and laid¹¹ himself down in his clothes.

To carry out Ali Baba's orders, Morgiana got his bathing linen ready, and bade Abdalla to set on the pot for the broth; but soon the lamp went¹² out, and there was no

¹ Lodge, 寄宿. ² Charged, 囑咐; 令. ³ Afresh, 再; 又; 重新. ⁴ Before day, 天未明時. ⁵ Bathing linen, 洗浴布. ⁶ Abdalla (abdalla), 人名. ⁷ Broth, 肉湯; 羹. ⁸ Against=in preparation for, 準備. ⁹ In turn, 順次; 次第. ¹⁰ Put out the light, 熄火; 滅燈. ¹¹ Laid himself down in his clothes, 和衣躺下; 不脫衣服而臥. ¹² Went out, 熄滅.

more oil in the house, nor any candles. She knew not what to do, till the slave reminded her of the oil jars in the yard. She thanked him for the thought, took the oil pot, and went out. When she came nigh the first jar, the robber within said softly: "Is it time?"

Of course she was surprised to find a man in the jar instead of the oil, but she saw at once that she must keep¹ silence, as Ali Baba, his family, and she herself were in great danger. Therefore she answered, without showing any fear: "Not yet, but presently."² In this manner she went to all the jars and gave the same answers, till she came to the jar of oil.

By this means Morgiana found that her master had admitted³ to his house thirty-eight robbers, of whom the pretended oil merchant, their captain, was one. She made what haste she could to fill her oil pot, and returned to her kitchen, lighted her lamp, and taking a great kettle⁴ went back to the oil jar and filled it. Then she set the kettle on a large wood⁵ fire, and as soon as it boiled⁶ went and poured⁷ enough into every jar to stifle⁸ and destroy⁹ the robber within.

When this deed, worthy of the courage of Morgiana, was done without any noise, as she had planned, she returned to the kitchen with the empty kettle, put out the lamp, and left just enough of the fire to make the broth. Then she sat silent, resolving not to go to rest till she had seen through the window that opened on the yard whatever might happen there.

¹ Keep silence, 靜默; 不作聲. ² Presently, 快了. ³ Admitted, 放入.
⁴ Kettle, 鍋. ⁵ Wood fire, 燃薪之火. ⁶ Boiled, 滾; 沸. ⁷ Poured, 倒入; 注. ⁸ Stifle, 悶死; 窒其呼吸而殺之. ⁹ Destroy, 毀滅.

It was not long before the captain of the robbers got up, and, seeing that all was dark and quiet, gave the appointed¹ signal by throwing little stones some of which hit the jars, as he doubted² not by the sound they gave. As there was no response,³ he threw stones a second and a third time, and could not imagine⁴ why there was no answer to his signal.

Much alarmed, he went softly⁵ down into the yard, and, going to the first jar to ask the robber if he was ready, smelt the hot boiled oil, which sent⁶ forth a steam⁷ out of the jar. From this he suspected that his plot⁸ was found out, and, looking into the jars one by one, he found that all his gang were dead. Enraged to despair, he forced⁹ the lock of a door that led from the yard to the garden, and made his escape. When Morgiana saw him go, she went to bed, well pleased that she had saved her master and his family.

Ali Baba rose before day, and went to the baths without knowing of what had happened in the night. When he returned he was very much surprised to see the oil jars in the yard and the mules in the stable.

“God preserve you and all your family,” said Morgiana when she was asked what it meant; “you will know better when you have seen what I have to show you.”

So saying she led him to the first jar, and asked him to see if there was any oil. When he saw a man instead, he started¹⁰ back in alarm.

¹ Appointed signal, 指定之信號; 約定之暗號. ² Doubted, 疑.
³ Response, 回音; 回答. ⁴ Imagine, 猜度; 想像. ⁵ Softly, 輕.
⁶ Sent forth, 發出. ⁷ Steam, 汽; 熱氣. ⁸ Plot, 陰謀; 詭計. ⁹ Forced the lock of, 力闖 . . . 之鎖. ¹⁰ Started back, 急退.

"Do not be afraid," said Morgiana; "he can do neither you nor anybody else the least harm.¹ He is dead. Now look into all the other jars."

Ali Baba was more and more amazed as he went on, and saw all the dead men and the sunken¹ oil jar at the end. He stood looking from the jars to Morgiana, till he found words to ask: "And what is become of the merchant?"

"Merchant!" answered she; "he² is as much one as I am."

Then she led him into the house, and told of all that she had done, from the first noticing³ of the chalk mark to the death of the robbers and the flight⁴ of their captain. On hearing of these brave deeds from Morgiana's own lips, Ali Baba said to her:

"God, by your means, has delivered me from death. For the first token⁵ of what I owe you, I give you your liberty⁶ from this moment, till I can fully reward⁷ you as I intend."

Near the trees at the end of Ali Baba's long garden, he and Abdalla dug a trench⁸ large enough to hold the bodies of the robbers. When they were buried there, Ali Baba hid the jars and weapons; and as the mules were of no use to him, he sent them at different times to be sold in the market by his slave.

V

The captain of the forty robbers had returned to his cave in the forest, but found himself so lonely there that the place became frightful to him. He resolved at the same

¹ Sunken, 淺. ² He is as much one as I am, 其人之非商人, 無異於我. ³ Noticing, 覺察; 知覺. ⁴ Flight, 逃. ⁵ Token, 表證; 記念. ⁶ Liberty, 自由; 自主之權 (謂不復以爲奴也). ⁷ Reward, 報酬. ⁸ Trench, 坑.

time to avenge¹ the fate of his comrades, and to bring² about the death of Ali Baba. For this purpose he returned to the town, disguised as a merchant of silks.³ By⁴ degrees he brought from his cavern many sorts of fine stuffs, and to dispose⁵ of these he took a warehouse that happened to be opposite Cassim's, which Ali Baba's son occupied⁶ since the death of his uncle.

He took the name of Cogia Houssain, and as a new-comer⁷ was very civil⁸ to the merchants near him. Ali Baba's son was one of the first to converse⁹ with him, and the new merchant was most friendly. Within two or three days Ali Baba came to see his son, and the captain of the robbers knew him at once, and soon learned from his son who he was. From that time forth he was still more polite¹⁰ to Ali Baba's son, who soon felt¹¹ bound to repay¹² the many kindnesses of his new friend.

As his own house was small, he arranged¹³ with his father that on a certain afternoon, when he and the merchant were passing by Ali Baba's house, they should stop, and he should ask them both to sup with him. The plan was carried out, though at first the merchant, with¹⁴ whose own plans it agreed perfectly, made as if to excuse himself. He even gave it as a reason for not remaining that he could eat no salt¹⁵ in his victuals.¹⁶

¹ Avenge, 復仇 (avenger 與 revenge 不同, avenger 爲他人復仇也, revenge 爲自己報怨也, 詳見英語政字辨異). ² Bring about, 致; 辦到.
³ Silks, 綢; 縐物. ⁴ By degrees, 漸漸. ⁵ Dispose of, 銷售. ⁶ Occupied, 居住. ⁷ Newcomer, 新來者. ⁸ Civil, 有禮; 謙和. ⁹ Converse, 談話. ¹⁰ Polite, 有禮; 謙和; 殷勤; 周到 (義較 civil 略進一層).
¹¹ Felt bound, 覺有不得不...之勢. ¹² Repay, 報償. ¹³ Arranged, 商議; 商定. ¹⁴ With whose own plans it agreed perfectly, 與彼所欲行之策, 適相符合. ¹⁵ Salt, 鹽. ¹⁶ Victuals (vit'ls), 食物.

"If that is all," said Ali Baba, "it need not deprive¹ me of the honor² of your company;" and he went to the kitchen and told Morgiana to put no salt into anything she was cooking that evening.

Thus Cogia Houssain was persuaded to stay, but to Morgiana it seemed very strange that any one should refuse to eat salt. She wished to see what manner of man it might be, and to³ this end, when she had finished what she had to do in the kitchen, she helped Abdalla carry up the dishes. Looking at Cogia Houssain, she knew him at first sight, in spite of his disguise, to be the captain of the robbers, and, scanning⁴ him very closely, saw that he had a dagger under his garment.

"I see now why this greatest enemy of my master would eat no salt with him. He intends to kill him; but I will prevent him."

While they were at supper Morgiana made up her mind to do one of the boldest deeds ever⁵ conceived. She dressed herself like a dancer,⁶ girded⁷ her waist⁸ with a silver-gilt⁹ girdle, from which hung a poniard,¹⁰ and put a handsome mask¹¹ on her face. Then, when the supper was ended, she said to Abdalla:

"Take your tabor,¹² and let us go and divert¹³ our master and his son's friend, as we sometimes do when he is alone."

¹ Deprive me of, 使我失. ² Honor of your company, 與君同席之榮; 叨陪樽俎之榮. ³ To this end (作 for this purpose 解), 因此. ⁴ Scanning, 細細察看. ⁵ Ever conceived, 曾爲人所想及者. ⁶ Dancer, 跳舞者; 舞女. ⁷ Girded, 纏; 束. ⁸ Waist, 腰. ⁹ Silver-gilt, 鍍銀. ¹⁰ Poniard (pōn/yārd), 短劍; 刺刀. ¹¹ Mask, 假面; 面具. ¹² Tabor, 小鼓. ¹³ Divert, 娛; 使之歡樂.

They presented themselves at the door with a low bow, and Morgiana was bidden to enter and show Cogia Houssain how well she danced. This, he knew, would interrupt¹ him in carrying out his wicked purpose, but he had to make² the best of it, and to seem pleased with Morgiana's dancing. She was indeed a good dancer, and on this occasion outdid³ herself in graceful⁴ and surprising motions.⁵ At the last, she took the tabor from Abdalla's hand, and held it out like those who dance for money.

Ali Baba put a piece of gold into it, and so did his son. When Cogia Houssain saw that she was coming to him, he pulled out his purse from his bosom to make her a present, but while he was putting his hand into it, Morgiana, with courage worthy of herself, plunged⁶ the poniard into his heart.

"Unhappy⁷ woman!" exclaimed Ali Baba, "what have you done to ruin me and my family?"

"It was to preserve,⁸ not to ruin⁹ you," answered Morgiana. Then she showed the dagger in Cogia Houssain's garment, and said: "Look well at him, and you will see that he is both the pretended oil merchant and the captain of the band of forty robbers. As soon as you told me that he would eat no salt with you, I suspected who it was, and when I saw him, I knew."

Ali Baba embraced her, and said: "Morgiana, I gave you your liberty before, and promised you more in time;

¹ Interrupt, 阻礙; 妨礙. ² Make the best of it, 竭力忍受.
³ Outdid herself, 勝常; 竭盡其力; 盡其所長. outdo, 勝. ⁴ Graceful, 纔有韻致. ⁵ Motions, 肢體之運動 (意謂跳舞時之體態). ⁶ Plunged . . . into, 突刺. ⁷ Unhappy = mischievous; wicked, 惡. ⁸ Preserve, 保全; 救護. ⁹ Ruin, 破敗; 傾覆.

now I would make you my daughter-in-law.¹ Consider,²” he said, turning to his son, “that by marrying Morgiana, you marry the preserver³ of my family and yours.”

The son was all the more ready to carry out his father’s wishes, because they were the same as his own, and within a few days he and Morgiana were married, but before this, the captain of the robbers was buried with his comrades, and so secretly was it done, that their bones⁴ were not found till many years had passed, when no one had any concern in making this strange story known.

For a whole year Ali Baba did not visit the robbers’ cave. At the end of that time, as nobody had tried to disturb⁵ him, he made⁶ another journey to the forest, and standing before the entrance to the cave, said: “Open, Sesame.” The door opened at once and from the appearance⁷ of everything within the cavern, he judged⁸ that nobody had been there since the captain had fetched the goods for his shop. From this time forth, he took as much of the treasure as his needs demanded. Some years later he carried his son to the cave, and taught him the secret, which he handed⁹ down in his family, who used their good fortune wisely, and lived in great honor and splendor.

¹ Daughter-in-law, 子婦; 媳婦. ² Consider, 試思. ³ Preserver, 保全 . . . 之人; 救護人. ⁴ Bones, 骨殖; 遺骸. ⁵ Disturb, 擾; 滋擾. ⁶ Made another journey, 再往. ⁷ Appearance, 形狀. ⁸ Judged, 斷定; 知. ⁹ Handed down, 傳授; 傳至子孫.

IX

THE STORY OF ABOU¹ HASSAN; OR, THE SLEEPER AWAKENED

I

IN the reign of the Caliph Haroun al Raschid there lived at Bagdad a very rich merchant. His only son, Abou Hassan, was educated² with great strictness. His youth³ was passed without any of those pleasures to which he thought his wealth entitled⁴ him. When he was thirty, his father died, and, becoming sole heir to the large property, he made up his mind that he would enjoy it. He divided his riches into two parts. With one half he bought houses in the city and farms in the country, resolving to lay⁵ by all the income⁶ they brought him. The other half, consisting of ready⁷ money, he determined⁸ to spend for present pleasures.

To this end he made⁹ the acquaintance of wealthy youths of his own age and rank. Every day he gave them splendid feasts at lavish¹⁰ expense.¹¹ At the end of the year his money was all gone, and the friends on whom he had spent it began to avoid¹² and desert¹³ him. This grieved Abou

¹ Abou Hassan (ä/bōs hās/dn), 人名. ² Educated with great strictness, 教督極爲嚴厲. educated, 受教育. ³ Youth, 少年之時. ⁴ Entitled, 應使得以享受. ⁵ Lay by, 儲蓄. ⁶ Income, 進款; 收益. ⁷ Ready money, 現款; 現錢. ⁸ Determined, 決定; 定意. ⁹ Made the acquaintance of, 結識; 交結. ¹⁰ Lavish, 奢曠; 侈縱; 多費. ¹¹ Expense, 費用; 價值. ¹² Avoid, 避; 不樂與俱. ¹³ Desert, 背; 棄.

Hassan more than the loss of his wealth. To¹ be sure, he still had a good estate² in his lands and farms, and he resolved to find out if his friends were really as false³ as they seemed.

"I will go to them one after another," he said to his mother, "and when I have shown them what I have done on⁴ their account, will ask them to help me in my need,⁵ merely to see if there is any gratitude in their hearts."

This he did at once, even promising to give bonds⁶ for what they might lend him, and tempting⁷ them with the hope of future feasts. But not one of his companions was moved by these arguments;⁸ some even pretended not to know him.

Full of wrath, he went again to his mother, and told her of a new resolve⁹ he had made. Not only did he renounce¹⁰ all his former companions, but he took an oath never to entertain¹¹ again a dweller¹² in Bagdad. He further vowed¹³ that he would not put in his purse more money than he should need for asking a single person to sup with him, and that person must be a stranger just arrived in the city, and meaning to depart the next morning.

This plan he carefully carried out. Every morning he provided for a repast for two,¹⁴ and at evening went to the end of the Bagdad bridge, where he invited a stranger to sup with him, and informed him of the law¹⁵ he had made for

¹ To be sure, 一定; 誠然. ² Estate, 產業; 財產. ³ False, 虛偽; 不忠信. ⁴ On their account (作 for them 解), 爲彼之故. ⁵ Need, 貧乏; 窘迫. ⁶ Bonds, 借據; 借票. ⁷ Tempting, 引誘; 話. ⁸ Arguments, 議論; 辭說. ⁹ Resolve, 決心; 決意; 定見. ¹⁰ Renounce, 捐棄; 不認; 斷絕. ¹¹ Entertain, 款待. ¹² Dweller, 居民. ¹³ Vowed, 誓; 發誓. ¹⁴ Two, 二人 (指賓主二人). ¹⁵ Law, 規則; 規律.

himself. The meal of which they partook¹ was not costly,² but well dressed.³ There was plenty⁴ of wine and cheerful talk. When he sent away his guest in the morning, he said: "God preserve you from all sorrow wherever you go. Do not take⁵ it ill if I tell you that we must never see each other again, either at home or anywhere else; so God conduct⁶ you."

For a long time Abou Hassan had been exact⁷ in the observance of his oath, when, one afternoon as he sat upon the bridge, the Caliph Haroun al Raschid came by, disguised as a merchant of Moussul,⁸ and followed by a tall, stout⁹ slave. Abou Hassan, looking out for a guest, gave the stranger the usual invitation,¹⁰ and told him what his custom¹¹ was. The odd¹² whim interested the Caliph, and he accepted the invitation, telling Abou Hassan only to lead the way, and he would follow.

So they came to the neatly¹³ furnished room, where the¹⁴ cloth was laid, and the supper served.¹⁵ They ate¹⁶ heartily of what they liked best, without speaking or drinking, according to the custom of the country. When they had done¹⁷ eating, the Caliph's slave brought water to wash their hands, and Abou Hassan's mother cleared the table and brought in a dessert¹⁸ of various¹⁹ fruits. As soon as it was dark, wax²⁰ candles were lighted, and Abou Hassan,

¹ Partook, 共享; 分享. ² Costly, 貴; 多費. ³ Dressed, 烹飪.
⁴ Plenty, 充足; 豐富. ⁵ Take it ill, 見怪. ⁶ Conduct, 引導; 指導.
⁷ Exact in the observance of, 確守. ⁸ Moussul (mō/sūl), 地名 (在小亞細亞). ⁹ Stout, 強壯; 強健. ¹⁰ Invitation, 邀請. ¹¹ Custom, 習慣.
¹² Odd whim, 奇想. ¹³ Neatly furnished, 陳設整潔. ¹⁴ The cloth was laid, 設席. cloth, 桌布. laid, 鋪設. ¹⁵ Served, 供; 進 (即“進食”之意). ¹⁶ Ate heartily, 大嚼. heartily, 誠; 不懈; 力. ¹⁷ Done eating, 食畢.
¹⁸ Dessert, 西俗飯畢所食果品細點之稱. ¹⁹ Various, 各種. ²⁰ Wax, 蠟.

after requesting his mother to take care of the slave, set down bottles¹ and glasses.² The Caliph and Abou Hassan sat drinking and talking on many subjects³ till the night was far advanced, when the Caliph, well pleased with his host's treatment of him, said: "I beg of you to tell me how I may serve⁴ you, for though I am only a merchant, it may be in my power to oblige⁵ you myself or by some friend." To this Abou Hassan replied:

"I can only thank you for your offer,⁶ and for the honor you have done me in partaking of my frugal⁷ fare. Yet I must tell you there is one thing I wish. I should like to be caliph for a single day, in the place of our sovereign⁸ lord and master, Haroun al Raschid, Commander of the Faithful. The imam of the mosque in the district⁹ where I live is a great hypocrite;¹⁰ he and four of his friends try to lord¹¹ it over me and the whole neighborhood. If I were caliph, I would punish the imam and his friends with a¹² hundred strokes each on the soles of their feet, to teach¹³ them not to disturb and abuse their neighbors in future."

The Caliph was much pleased with the thought of Abou Hassan's; and while his host¹⁴ was talking, he took the bottle and two glasses, and, filling his own first, said: "Here is a¹⁵ cup of thanks to you." Then he filled the other, put carefully into it a little sleeping powder which he had about him, and gave it to Abou Hassan, saying:

¹ Bottles, 瓶. ² Glasses, 杯. ³ Subjects, 事. ⁴ Serve, 爲 . . . 效力; 報. ⁵ Oblige, 加惠於. ⁶ Offer, 允爲之事; 美意. ⁷ Frugal fare, 儉約之餐; 不豐之食; 菲酌. ⁸ Sovereign, 至高; 至尊. ⁹ District, 地方; 區域. ¹⁰ Hypocrite (hip/ô-krit), 矯飾之人; 僞君子; 癡惡. ¹¹ Lord, 陵虐; 欺壓. ¹² A hundred strokes each on the soles of their feet, 每人笞躐百下. strokes, 下 (一擊). soles, 腳掌; 蹠. ¹³ Teach, 教導; 使知. ¹⁴ Host, 主人. ¹⁵ A cup of thanks to you, 敬奉一卮, 藉申謝忱.

"You have taken the pains to fill for me all night, and it is the least I can do to save you the trouble once. I beg you to take this glass, and drink¹ it off for my sake."

Abou Hassan did as he was asked, and scarcely had he set the glass upon the table, when he fell into a sound sleep. The Caliph commanded his slave to carry Abou Hassan directly to the palace, and put him into his own state² bed. This was done at once.

At the palace the Caliph sent for the Grand Vizier. "Giafar," he said, "do not be surprised to-morrow when you come³ to audience, to see this man seated in my throne in the royal robes. Pay him the same respect that you would show to me. Do exactly as he bids you, even if his freedom⁴ in spending money should empty all my coffers.⁵ Bid all the officers of the palace to conduct⁶ themselves as if I were on the throne, and to carry on the whole matter so that nothing shall spoil⁷ the pleasure I promise myself. Above all, fail not to awaken me before Abou Hassan; I wish to be present when he awakes."

II

Early in the morning the Caliph hid himself in a little raised⁸ closet in the room where the sleeper lay. All the officers of the court entered and took their usual places about the Caliph's bed. Just at daybreak, when it was time to make ready for the morning prayer before sunrise, Abou Hassan was awakened by an officer who put a

¹ Drink it off, 盡此一杯. ² State bed, 御榻. ³ Come to audience, 入朝; 入覲. ⁴ Freedom, 奢侈; 無節; 揮霍. ⁵ Coffers, 金櫃; 金庫. ⁶ Conduct themselves, 自處; 持躬. ⁷ Spoil, 敗壞. ⁸ Raised closet, 高壁櫃.

sponge¹ steeped² in vinegar³ to his nose. His opening eyes saw the rich furnishing⁴ of a large room, vases of gold and silver, a silk tapestry⁵ on the floor, a bed⁶ covering of cloth⁷ of gold embossed⁸ with pearls and diamonds. Near the bed on a cushion⁹ were clothes of tissue embroidered¹⁰ with pearls, and a caliph's turban. Many slaves richly dressed were standing with modesty and respect.

At the sight of this splendor, Abou Hassan was filled with amazement. But he told himself he was only dreaming¹¹ about the wish he had made the night before. Yet this could hardly be, for the Grand Vizier, bowing to the ground, certainly said:

“Commander of the Faithful, it is time for your majesty to rise to prayers; the¹² morning begins to advance.”

These words very much surprised Abou Hassan. Clapping his hands before his eyes and lowering his head, he said to himself: “What means all this? Where am I? To whom does this palace belong? How is it possible for me to tell whether I am in my right senses or in a dream?”

Lifting his head and opening his eyes, he saw the full morning sunshine, and there was Mesrour¹³ the chief of the officers, prostrating¹⁴ himself before him, and saying:

“Commander of the Faithful, your majesty will excuse me for saying that you used not to rise so late, and that the

¹ Sponge, 海绵; 海棉. ² Steeped, 浸; 没浸. ³ Vinegar, 醋. ⁴ Furnishing, 铺陈. ⁵ Tapestry, 有花纹物 (以作帷幕地衣及障壁者). ⁶ Bed covering, 被. ⁷ Cloth of gold, 金线织成之帛. ⁸ Embossed, 上纹. ⁹ Cushion, 椅褥; 椅垫. ¹⁰ Embroidered, 饰. ¹¹ Dreaming, 梦见. ¹² The morning begins to advance, 日已渐高; 时已不早. ¹³ Mesrour (més-rūr'), 人名. ¹⁴ Prostrating, 俯伏.

hour of prayer is over.¹ It is time to ascend² your throne, and hold³ a council as usual; all the great officers of state await your presence in the council⁴ hall."

By this time Abou Hassan was persuaded⁵ that he was neither asleep nor in a dream. Looking earnestly at Mesroul, he said to him in a serious⁶ tone: "Whom is it that you address⁷ as Commander of the Faithful? I do not know you, and you must mistake me for somebody else."

When Mesroul assured him that he was Haroun al Raschid, he burst out laughing, and fell backward on the bolster.⁸ This pleased the Caliph so much that he would have laughed as loud⁹ himself, had he not feared to end the pleasant sport.

When Abou Hassan had tired himself with laughing, he called the nearest officer, and told him to bite¹⁰ the end of his finger, that he might feel whether he was asleep or awake. The slave, knowing that the Caliph was looking on, bit the finger so hard that Abou Hassan snatched his hand quickly back again, saying:

"I find I am awake; but by what miracle¹¹ am I become caliph in a night's time?"

No sooner had he risen from the bed and set his feet on the floor than he was greeted¹² by the salutations¹³ of all who were there: "Commander of the Faithful, God, give your majesty a good day." Then he was helped to dress,

¹ Over, 過; 畢. ² Ascend, 升; 登; 御. ³ Hold a council, 召集會議; 聽政. ⁴ Council hall, 議政廳; 會議室. ⁵ Persuaded (past participle of "persuade"), 極言以求其信; 以辯論曉之. ⁶ Serious tone, 嚴正之聲. ⁷ Address, 稱. ⁸ Bolster, 枕. ⁹ Loud = loudly. ¹⁰ Bite, 咬. ¹¹ Miracle, 不可思議之事. ¹² Greeted, 問候; 致敬以表敬肅. ¹³ Salutations, 致敬之辭.

and was escorted¹ between rows² of attendants to the council chamber, no longer doubting that he was caliph, by whatever means the change had been wrought.³ Thus he was seated upon the throne with all the ceremonies⁴ of respect with which the true caliph was wont to be honored.

The Caliph himself in the meantime left the closet where he had been hiding, and went to another from which he could see all that happened in the council chamber. He could not but admire the grace and dignity with which Abou Hassan conducted himself in his exalted⁵ station, deciding promptly and wisely upon important matters.

While the Grand Vizier was making his report,⁶ Abou Hassan saw the *cadi*,⁷ or judge of the police,⁸ whom he knew⁹ by sight, sitting in his place. "Stop," he said to the Grand Vizier; "I have an order of importance for the *cadi*."

The *cadi* came forward, and bowed to the ground. "Go at once," said Abou Hassan, "to such a quarter, where you will find a mosque; seize the imam and four old men, his friends, and give them each a hundred strokes. After that, mount them all five, clothed in rags,¹⁰ on camels, with their faces to the tails,¹¹ and lead them through the whole city, with a crier¹² before them, who shall proclaim¹³ with a loud voice: 'This is the punishment of all those who interfere in other people's affairs.' Make them leave that quarter, and never set¹⁴ foot on it more." The *cadi* laid his hand upon his head, to show his obedience, and, bowing again to the earth, retired.

¹ Escorted, 陪送; 隨扈; 呼擁. ² Rows, 行; 列. ³ Wrought= worked, 致; 成. ⁴ Ceremonies, 禮節. ⁵ Exalted station, 高貴之地位. ⁶ Report, 報告. ⁷ *Cadi* 或作 *kadi* (*kā/dī*), 警察長. ⁸ Police, 警察; 警務. ⁹ Knew by sight, 熟識; 一見即識. ¹⁰ Rags, 敝衣; 破服. ¹¹ Tails, 尾. ¹² Crier, 叫喊者. ¹³ Proclaim, 宣告. ¹⁴ Set foot on, 踐; 履其地.

Then addressing the Grand Vizier, Abou Hassan said: "Go to the high treasurer for a purse of a thousand pieces of gold, and carry it to the mother of one Abou Hassan; she lives in the same quarter to which I sent the judge of the police. Go, and return at once."

The Grand Vizier did as he was bid, and, followed by a slave bearing the money, searched out Abou Hassan's mother, to whom he said: "The Caliph makes you this present." She received it with the greatest surprise.

When the judge of the police and the Grand Vizier had returned and reported the fulfilment of the commands they had received, the business of the morning was brought¹ to an end. Abou Hassan made² a sign to the officers that the council was over, and that they might all retire, which they did, bowing one by one at the foot of the throne.

Abou Hassan was then conducted³ with much ceremony to a stately⁴ hall, where a table was set with gold plates and dishes, that scented⁵ the air with the spices⁶ and amber⁷ with which the meats were seasoned.⁸ Seven young and beautiful ladies stood about to fan⁹ him while he ate. Charmed by their beauty, he paid¹⁰ them witty compliments, and said that he needed only one to fan him, and asked the other six to sit with him at the table and share his meal.

When the ladies perceived that he had done eating, they directed¹¹ the slaves to bring water, and, rising from the table, one presented a gold basin, another a gold ewer,¹²

¹ Brought to an end, 完畢; 終了. ² Made a sign to, 示意.
³ Conducted, 引; 導. ⁴ Stately, 壯麗; 莊嚴. ⁵ Scented, 發出香氣; 使 . . . 有 . . . 之香. ⁶ Spices, 香料. ⁷ Amber, 龍涎香. ⁸ Seasoned, 加香料; 醃; 製. ⁹ Fan, 扇; 搗扇. ¹⁰ Paid them witty compliments, 以諧語贊頌之. paid compliments, 致意; 稱頌; 贊揚. witty, 諧謔. ¹¹ Directed, 指揮; 命令. ¹² Ewer, 水瓶; 盥洗手水之瓷口壺.

another a towel,¹ and, kneeling before him, they invited him to wash his hands. He was then escorted to another large hall, where there was a table, laid with seven golden basins, holding sweetmeats² and the choicest³ fruits; and seven other beautiful ladies were waiting to fan him. Finding it hard to decide to which of these ladies he should give⁴ the preference, he asked⁵ them all to lay aside their fans, and sit down and eat with him. All this while the Caliph was watching him, more and more delighted that he had found a man who amused him so pleasantly.

When day⁶ began to close, Abou Hassan was conducted into still another hall, of greater splendor than the others, brightly lighted and superbly⁷ furnished. Here musicians⁸ were playing,⁹ and on a table by the wall, seven large silver flagons were set out, full of the choicest wines, and by them seven crystal¹⁰ glasses of the finest workmanship.¹⁰ In the other halls he had drunk nothing but water, according to the custom observed by all¹¹ classes at Bagdad, from¹² the lowest to the highest, at the Caliph's court, never to drink wine till the evening.

Here, as in the other halls, he made gallant¹³ speeches to the beautiful ladies who were appointed¹⁴ to fan him, asking all their names, and drinking¹⁵ the health of each in turn. When this was done, one of them came forward with a glass of wine, into which she had secretly put a pinch¹⁶ of

¹ Towel, 巾; 手巾. ² Sweetmeats, 糖果; 蜜餞果品. ³ Choicest, 精選; 最上等. ⁴ Give the preference, 選擇; 加以青睞; 加以優異之待遇. ⁵ Day began to close, 天色將晚. ⁶ Superbly, 華麗. ⁷ Musicians, 樂人; 樂師. ⁸ Playing, 奏樂. ⁹ Crystal, 水晶. ¹⁰ Workmanship, 工作; 手藝. ¹¹ All classes, 各種階級之人. ¹² From the lowest to the highest, 自天子以至於庶人. ¹³ Gallant speeches, 取悅婦人之言. ¹⁴ Appointed, 專派; 派定. ¹⁵ Drinking the health of each, 一一與爲壽. ¹⁶ Pinch, 一撮; 些少之量.

the same powder which the Caliph had used the night before, and presented it to Abou Hassan, saying:

“Commander of the Faithful, I beg your majesty to take this glass of wine, and before you drink it do me the favor to hear a song¹ which I have composed² to-day. I flatter³ myself it will not displease you.”

When she had finished singing, he drank off the glass, but before he could give her the praises which he thought she merited,⁴ his head dropped on the cushions, and he slept as profoundly⁵ as on the night before, when the Caliph had given him the powder. One of the ladies stood ready to catch⁶ the glass, which fell out of his hand; and then the Caliph, who had seen everything, came into the hall, in great joy at the success of his plan. He ordered Abou Hassan to be dressed in his own clothes, and carried back to his house, and to be put in his usual bed.

III

Abou Hassan slept very late the next morning. When he awoke he could not believe that he was in his own room. He called aloud to the ladies of the palace by their names: “Cluster⁷ of Pearls, Morning⁸ Star, Coral⁹ Lips, where are you? Come hither.”

His mother heard him, and, running to his room, said: “What¹⁰ ails you, my son? What has happened to you?”

· ¹ Song, 歌. ² Composed, 編成. ³ Flatter myself, 自喜; 自誇. flatter, 諂; 媚. ⁴ Merited, 應得. ⁵ Profoundly, 沉着. ⁶ Catch, 接住. ⁷ Cluster of Pearls, 真珠球 (宮妓名). ⁸ Morning Star, 啓明星 (宮妓名). ⁹ Coral Lips, 珊瑚脣 (宮妓名). ¹⁰ What ails you, 何物苦汝 (即“汝有何病”之意). ails, 困; 苦; 病.

He lifted his head and said haughtily: "Good woman, who is it you call your son? I am not your son. I am the Commander of the Faithful, and you shall never persuade¹ me to the contrary."

When she told him of the punishment that had fallen upon the imam and his friends, and of the present which the Caliph had sent to her, he was still more convinced that he was the caliph, for had he not ordered these things himself? She continued to tell him that he was not the caliph, but her own son, Abou Hassan. At length this made him furiously² angry, and, rising from his bed, he began to beat her with a cane.³

The neighbors, hearing her cries for help, soon ran in, and, persuaded that he was mad, seized him and bound⁴ him hand and foot, and conducted him to a hospital⁵ for mad folk,⁶ where he was lodged in a grated⁷ cell, and beaten every day with fifty strokes across the shoulders. Each time he was advised to remember that he was not the Commander of the Faithful.

His good mother visited him every day, and wept over his hardships.⁸ It was not long before these practical⁹ proofs that he was not the caliph had their effect. He admitted that he had been deceived in some way that he could not understand. His mother was filled with joy at what she thought was the restoring¹⁰ of his mind, and told

¹ Persuade me to the contrary, 使我信其非是. to the contrary, 相反. ² Furiously, 狂. ³ Cane, 杖; 棍. ⁴ Bound him hand and foot, 縛其手足. ⁵ Hospital, 醫院. ⁶ Folk, 人 (近世英文, 於此字之前, 每冠以 little, poor, common, 或 mad 等區別字, 無單用者; 但其複數 folks 則否). ⁷ Grated cell, 有鐵欄防護之小室. ⁸ Hardships, 困苦; 所受之苦. ⁹ Practical proofs, 實在之證據 (指駁駁). ¹⁰ Restoring of his mind, 精神恢復原狀; 覺悟.

him her fears that the stranger whom he had brought home on the evening before his illness had been the cause of all the trouble.

"Give thanks to God, my son, for your deliverance," she said, "and pray that you may never fall again under the spell¹ of magic."

Abou Hassan was at once released² and went home with his mother. He soon recovered his strength, and returned to his old habit of going to the Bagdad bridge, to invite a stranger to sup with him. On the very first day, he had not been long at the bridge when he saw the Moussul merchant coming toward him, followed by the same slave as before. He shuddered³ at the sight, and with prayer, "God preserve me!" resolved to let the merchant pass as if unseen.

But the Caliph, who had informed himself of what had happened to Abou Hassan, stopped, looked him in the face, and said: "Ho,⁴ brother Abou Hassan, I greet you! Give⁵ me leave to embrace you."

"Not I," replied Abou Hassan, "I do not greet you; I will have neither your greeting nor your embrace. Go about your business."

The Caliph was not to be put⁶ off by his rude⁷ behavior; and Abou Hassan, in spite of his law against supping twice with the same stranger, yielded⁸ at length to the Caliph's caresses,⁹ and invited him to his house.

¹ Spell, 咒語; 蠱惑; 魔力. ² Released, 放; 釋放. ³ Shuddered, 戰兢; 因恐懼而身體發顫. ⁴ Ho (叱喝詞, 發聲以令人注意者也). ⁵ Give me leave, 許我; 容我. ⁶ Put off, 擯棄; 謝絕. ⁷ Rude behavior, 粗魯之行爲; 無禮之舉動. ⁸ Yielded, 讓步; 屈從; 允從. ⁹ Caresses, 表示親愛之動作 (如 embrace 等類).

"You come," said Abou Hassan, "on one condition, that you neither make nor express any good wishes for me. All the mischief that has happened to me came from that."

The Caliph agreed, and they went to the house of Abou Hassan, where the supper was served, the table cleared, and the wine and fruit put upon it by his mother. The talk turned¹ upon the lonely² life of Abou Hassan, and the Caliph expressed surprise that he was content to live without a wife.

"I warrant³ I can find you just the wife you need," said the Caliph; and taking Abou Hassan's glass he dropped a pinch of his sleeping powder into it as he filled it with wine, and handed it back, saying: "Come, let us drink to the fair lady's health."

Abou Hassan laughed as he took the glass. "Be⁴ it so, if you wish," he said; and again in a moment he lay in a deep sleep, and was carried as before to the Caliph's palace.

IV

When they arrived at the palace, the Caliph ordered Abou Hassan to be put in the very hall whence he had been carried home fast asleep a month before. He ordered all the officers, ladies, and musicians who were in the hall when he drank the last glass of wine to be there by day-break, and to act their parts well when he should awake. He himself must be summoned in time, he told his chief attendant, to hide in the closet as before.

¹ Turned upon, 漸及; 涉及. ² Lonely life, 孤寂之生活; 獨處; 僻居.
³ Warrant, 擔保; 斷言. ⁴ Be it so = let it be so.

In the morning the effects of the powder wore¹ off, and Abou Hassan began to awake. At that instant the musicians began² an agreeable concert. When the sleeper opened his eyes, he found himself in the gorgeous³ chamber of his first dream, and surrounded by the same persons. Here was a second wonder.

When the concert ceased⁴ and all the officers of the chamber stood in⁵ profound silence, Abou Hassan bit his finger, and cried out so loud that the Caliph could hear him.

“Alas, I am fallen into the same dream as before, and must expect again the beatings and the cell at the madhouse.⁶ He was a wicked man that I took home with me last night. He has done all this. Great God, I commit⁷ myself into Thy hands: save me from the temptation⁸ of Satan.⁹”

Now he tried to go to sleep again, and to regard¹⁰ all he saw as a dream; but one officer took him by one arm, and a second by the other, and lifted him up, and carried him into the middle of the hall, where they seated him, and, all taking¹¹ hands, danced and skipped¹² around him while the music sounded loudly in his ears.

Abou Hassan commanded silence, and in great doubt asked if he were indeed the caliph. When they told him he had never been out of the hall since the time he fell asleep in it, he bared¹³ his shoulders, and bade the ladies look at the livid¹⁴ marks of the strokes he had received.

¹ Wore off; 消滅. ² Began an agreeable concert, 合奏一種悅耳之樂. concert, 合奏之樂. ³ Gorgeous, 華麗. ⁴ Ceased, 停止. ⁵ In-profound silence, 肅靜無聲. ⁶ Madhouse, 瘋人院. ⁷ Commit, 託付. ⁸ Temptation, 誘惑; 迷惑. ⁹ Satan, 魔王; 惡魔. ¹⁰ Regard, 當作; 視為. ¹¹ Taking hands, 攜手. ¹² Skipped, 踊躍. ¹³ Bared, 露; 露. ¹⁴ Livid marks, 青紫之傷痕.

"If I received these strokes in my sleep in this hall," he said, "it is the strangest thing in the world."

Then he called to an officer who stood near: "Come hither, and bite the tip¹ of my ear, that I may know whether I am asleep or awake."

The officer obeyed, and bit so hard that Abou Hassan cried aloud with the pain. At the same time the music struck² up, and the officers and ladies all began to sing, dance and skip about him, and made such a noise that he was the more sure they were making him the³ subject of a joke. Joining⁴ in the spirit of it, he threw off his caliph's habit⁵ and his turban, jumped up in his undergarments⁶ and danced with the rest, cutting⁷ such capers that the Caliph could not contain⁸ himself, but burst into violent laughter; and, putting his head into the room, cried: "Abou Hassan, Abou Hassan, have you a mind to kill me with laughing?"

As soon as the Caliph's voice was heard, everybody was silent, and Abou Hassan, turning to see whence it came, recognized⁹ the Moussul merchant, and knew him to be the Caliph. He was not in the least daunted,¹⁰ but, seeing at once what had happened to him, entered¹¹ into the Caliph's humor.

"Ha!¹² ha!" said Abou Hassan, looking into his face, "you pretend to be a merchant of Moussul, and complain

¹ Tip, 尖; 端 (指耳垂; 耳之下端). ² Struck up, 彈奏. ³ The subject of a joke, 爲人嘲弄; 爲人所揶揄. subject, 標的 (謂近侍宮妾之歌舞, 正所以玩弄之也). ⁴ Joining in the spirit, 湊趣; 助興. spirit, 興致. ⁵ Habit, 服裝; 衣. ⁶ Undergarments, 裏服; 裏衣. ⁷ Cutting . . . capers, 手舞足蹈 (cutting such capers, 爲跳躍奇詭之狀). ⁸ Contain, 忍; 持. ⁹ Recognized, 認識. ¹⁰ Daunted, 恐懼; 懼. ¹¹ Entered into the Caliph's humor, 順凱立夫之意爲之. entered into, 就; 將順. humor, 性情. ¹² Ha (叱罵詞, 表驚愕歡喜等情者).

that I would kill you. You have made me beat my mother, and lose my senses, and have been the cause of all my troubles. I beg of you to tell me how you have done it; I would know, that I may get my senses back."

"You will remember," said the Caliph, "that when we first met, you said that your one wish was to be caliph for four-and-twenty hours. I saw in this wish a fruitful¹ source² of pleasure to me and my court, and I let you carry it out. By means of a strong sleeping powder which I put³ without³ your knowledge, into the last glass of wine, I had you brought to my palace. You know the rest. I am sorry for the suffering that followed, and will do all I can to make⁴ amends. Thou art my brother; ask what thou wilt and thou shalt have it."

"Commander of the Faithful," replied Abou Hassan, "my tortures⁵ are all forgotten, since my sovereign lord and master had a share in them. The only boon⁶ I would beg is that I may have access⁷ to your person, and enjoy, through my lifetime, the admiration of your virtues.⁸"

The Caliph ordered a rich robe to be brought, gave Abou Hassan an office⁹ in the palace, with access at all times to his person, and directed the treasurer to give him a purse of a thousand pieces of gold. Abou Hassan bowed to the ground, and departed to tell his mother of his good fortune, and how he had really been caliph, for the Caliph himself had told him so.

¹ Fruitful, 豐富. ² Source, 源. ³ Without your knowledge, 不令汝知. ⁴ Make amends, 補救; 補償. ⁵ Tortures, 苦痛; 苦楚. ⁶ Boon, 恩. ⁷ Access, 接近; 易見. ⁸ Virtues, 德行. ⁹ Office, 職; 官職.

V

Admitted¹ thus to the court, and to the favor not only of the Caliph, but also of his Queen, Abou Hassan was soon married to her favorite² slave. No two persons could have been better suited to one another. It would have been better, indeed, if they had not been so much alike in³ one respect. They vied⁴ with each other in giving costly entertainments to their friends, and at the end of a single year had spent everything that was given them by the Caliph and Queen, besides the portion⁵ of Abou Hassan's own fortune which he had saved. Being in great straits,⁶ they took⁷ counsel together, and Abou Hassan proposed a pleasant⁸ trick⁹ to be played¹⁰ upon the Caliph and his Queen.

"I will feign¹¹ myself to be dead," he said to his wife; "you shall lay me in the middle of my chamber with my feet towards Mecca, as if I were ready for burial.¹² Then you must weep and tear your hair and clothes, and go in all your tears to the Queen. When she is told the cause of your grief, she will give you money for my funeral, and a piece¹³ of gold brocade in¹⁴ the place of the piece you will have torn. When you return to me, I will rise, lay you in my place, and act the same part with the Caliph, who will be as generous¹⁵ as his Queen."

¹ Admitted, 許入; 許其發進. ² Favorite, 寵; 寵愛. ³ In one respect, 在一種事件上. ⁴ Vied with, 競爭; 爭勝. ⁵ Portion, 一部份. ⁶ Straits, 貧乏; 窘迫. ⁷ Took counsel, 商量; 商議. ⁸ Pleasant, 有趣味. ⁹ Trick, 愚弄. ¹⁰ Played upon, 加於. ¹¹ Feign, 佯爲; 假作. ¹² Burial, 葬. ¹³ Piece, 一方; 一塊; 一疋. ¹⁴ In the place of, 以換. ¹⁵ Generous, 慷慨; 大量.

This they proceeded at once to do, with exactly the result that Abou Hassan had predicted.¹ Both the Queen and the Caliph were distressed in turn to hear of the death of the witty Abou Hassan and the favorite slave, and each made a generous gift to the pretended survivor.²

The Caliph, as soon as Abou Hassan had left him, hastened to the Queen to comfort her for the loss of her favorite. He found her weeping, and said:

"Madam, I grieve with you in the loss of your faithful slave."

"It is not she who is dead," replied the Queen, "but Abou Hassan, her husband."

"Madam," he answered, "you are deceived. I have just seen him in perfect health."

"Nay,³ but I have just seen her, weeping for his death."

Neither could believe the other, and at length the Caliph, in anger, bade the Vizier go and see if it were not Abou Hassan's wife who had died, and not he.

"I will stake⁴ my garden of pleasures against your palace of the paintings⁵ that I am right," said the Caliph.

"I accept⁶ the wager,"⁷ said his Queen, "and will stand⁸ by it."

Meanwhile Abou Hassan, who knew that this question must arise, saw the Vizier coming towards his house, guessed his errand, and bade his wife make haste to act her part. He had barely time to wrap her up, and lay upon her the piece of brocade the Caliph had given him, when the Vizier entered.

¹ Predicted, 預言; 逆料. ² Survivor, 未死者; 尚存者; 後死者; 未亡人. ³ Nay, 非獨此也. ⁴ Stake, 賭; 賭東道. ⁵ Paintings, 繪畫. ⁶ Accept, 承諾. ⁷ Wager, 所賭之物; 彩. ⁸ Stand by, 臨守; 不悔.

When he returned and told the Caliph and his Queen what he had seen, she exclaimed:

"I am not blind or mad. I know that it is Abou Hassan who has died. My nurse,¹ in whom I have complete trust, shall go and see."

Watching from his window, Abou Hassan saw the nurse hobbling² as fast as she could towards his house. He called to his wife, who quickly wrapped him up, and, beating her breast, seated herself by his head. Thus the nurse found them, and hastened back to tell what she had seen.

"It is a strange series³ of marvels," said the Caliph, "and no one can be believed. Let us go ourselves, and learn the truth of the matter."

When Abou Hassan's wife saw them both coming, she cried out: "What shall we do! We are ruined."

"Not at all," replied her husband. "At the rate⁴ they are walking, we shall be ready before they reach the door."

Then he and his wife laid themselves down side by side, in the middle of the chamber, as if dead, and covered themselves as well as they could, and waited till the Caliph and his Queen should come.

"Alas," said she, when they had opened the door, and looked in silence for some time at the sad sight, "it is true that my dear slave is dead, through grief, no doubt, at having lost her husband."

"Allow rather, madam," said the Caliph, "that she died first, and that Abou Hassan could not live when she was dead."

Nurse, 乳母; 保母. ² Hobbling, 蹣跚而行 (跛蹣者行路之狀).
³ Series, 連續而至之事. ⁴ Rate, 率; 速率.

"No," said the Queen, unwilling to yield, "Abou Hassan died first, because my nurse saw his wife alive, weeping for her husband's death."

The Caliph was vexed that the truth was not yet clear, and tried to think of some plan that should decide the wager in his favor.

"I will give," cried he, "a thousand pieces to the person who shall tell me which of the two died first."

He had scarcely spoken these words, when he heard a voice, under the brocade that covered Abou Hassan, say:

"Commander of the Faithful, I died first; give me the thousand pieces of gold." At the same time Abou Hassan sprang up and threw himself at the Caliph's feet; and his wife in the same manner ran to the Queen, who, after a moment of fright, gave¹ way to joy that her dear slave was still alive.

"So then, Abou Hassan," said the Caliph, laughing, "how came² it into your head thus to befool³ us both?"

Abou Hassan said, "I will tell you the whole truth," and confessed for himself and his wife their folly⁴ and the debts⁵ it had caused, and humbly asked forgiveness for the trick they had practiced,⁶ if indeed it had offended⁷ their⁸ highnesses who were so fond of pleasant jokes.

"Follow me," said the Caliph, "and I will give you the thousand pieces of gold that I promised you, for the joy I feel that you are both alive."

¹ Gave way to, 一變而爲; 反覺 (本爲 "讓步於 . . ." 之意. 謂初驚而終喜, 驚不勝其喜也). ² Came into head, 想起; 想出. head, 頭腦. ³ Befool, 戲弄; 愚弄. ⁴ Folly, 愚笨; 糊塗; 不智之行. ⁵ Debts, 債; 債務. ⁶ Practiced, 行. ⁷ Offended, 冒犯; 得罪. ⁸ Their highnesses, 兩宮陛下.

The Queen would not be outdone,¹ and gave another thousand pieces of gold to Abou Hassan's wife. Thus did they both obtain favor, and gain enough to supply all their wants.

¹ Outdone, 爲人所勝.

X

THE STORY OF THE THREE SISTERS

I

THERE was an Emperor¹ of Persia who often yalked in disguise through the city, attended by a trusty² minister,³ and meeting with many adventures. Once when he was passing through a street in which dwelt only humble folk, he heard some people talking very loud within a certain house, and, looking in, saw three sisters sitting on a sofa.

"Since we have got⁴ upon wishes," said the eldest, "mine shall be to have the Sultan's baker⁵ for my husband, for then I should eat⁶ my fill of that excellent bread called the Sultan's."

"For⁷ my part," said the second sister, "I wish I were wife to the Sultan's chief cook, for bread must be common in the palace, and I should eat of the choicest dishes. You see that I have a better taste⁸ than you."

The youngest sister, who was very beautiful and had more charms and wit than the others, spoke in her turn:

"For my part, since we are wishing, I wish to be the Emperor's queen⁹ consort, and the mother of a lovely prince, whose hair shall be gold on one side of his head and silver on the other; when he cries, the tears from his eyes shall be pearl; and when he smiles, his vermilion¹⁰ lips shall look like a rosebud fresh¹¹ blown."

¹ Emperor, 皇帝. ² Trusty, 可信; 忠實. ³ Minister, 大臣. ⁴ Got upon, 談及; 講到. ⁵ Baker, 製餅者; 餅師. ⁶ Eat my fill of, 飽食, fill, 充足; 滿足. ⁷ For my part, 依我說. ⁸ Taste, 好尚; 志向. ⁹ Queen consort, 皇后. ¹⁰ Vermilion (vēr-mīl/yūn), 朱色; 紅. ¹¹ Fresh blown, 新開; 初放.

The Sultan resolved to gratify¹ these strange wishes, and bade his Vizier note² the house, and bring him the three sisters on the next day. When they came before him, he asked them if they remembered the desires they expressed the night before. "Speak the truth," he said; "I must know what they were."

The sisters were so much abashed that they could say nothing, and the Sultan told them that he knew their wishes.

"You," he said, "who wished to be my wife, shall have your desire this day; and you," he added, turning to the other two, "shall be married to my chief baker and cook."

The nuptials³ all took place that day, the youngest sister's with all the pomp that is usual at the marriages of the emperors of Persia, the others according to the rank of the Sultan's chief baker and head⁴ cook.

Though the older sisters had got their wishes, they were far⁵ from being content, and made many plans to revenge themselves upon the Queen for having won a higher honor. Yet outwardly⁶ they showed nothing but love and respect.

When the Queen gave⁷ birth to a young prince, as⁸ bright as the day, the child was given into the sisters' care; but they wrapped it up in a basket, and floated⁹ it away on a canal¹⁰ that ran¹¹ near the palace, and declared that the Queen had given birth to a little dog. This made the Emperor very angry.

¹ Gratify, 使 . . . 滿足; 償. ² Note, 注意; 牢記. ³ Nuptials, 婚禮. ⁴ Head, 領袖. ⁵ Far from being content, 極不滿足; 甚不滿意. ⁶ Outwardly, 表面上. ⁷ Gave birth to, 生; 產. ⁸ As bright as the day, 皎如白日; 甚美 (謂其接於目, 如日光之輝耀, 使人喜悅也). ⁹ Floated, 置於水上; 任其流去. ¹⁰ Canal, 運河; 河. ¹¹ Ran, 流.

In the meantime, the basket in which the little Prince was exposed¹ was carried by the stream towards the garden of the palace. By chance the keeper² of the Emperor's gardens, one of the chief officers of the kingdom, was walking by the side of this canal, and, noticing the basket, called a gardener³ who was not far off, to pull it to shore with the rake⁴ he had in his hand.

When this was done, the keeper of the gardens was greatly surprised to see in the basket a child, newly⁵ born, but with very fine features.⁶ As he had no children of his own, he bore it with delight to his wife in their house at the entrance to the garden, and said:

"God has sent us this child. Provide a nurse, and treat him as if he were our own son. From this moment, I hold⁷ him as such." The keeper's wife received the child with great joy.

The next year the Queen bore another prince, whom her sisters treated in the same cruel way, pretending this time that the child was a cat. Happily the same chance as before brought it into the hands of the keeper and his wife, both of whom received it with delight. The Emperor of Persia was even more enraged than before, and would have made the Queen feel his anger, but for the pleading⁸ of the Grand Vizier.

When a princess was born the next year, the two sisters exposed it to the same fate as the Princes, her brothers, for they were bent upon seeing the Queen cast off, turned out, and humbled. But the Princess, like her brothers, was saved by the keeper of the gardens.

¹ Exposed, 置於危險地位。 ² Keeper of the . . . gardens, 管園之吏。
³ Gardener, 園丁。 ⁴ Rake, 耙; 爬草之器。 ⁵ Newly born, 新生; 纔落地。
⁶ Features, 狀貌; 容貌。 ⁷ Hold him as such, 即以彼爲親生之子。
⁸ Pleading, 請求; 力諫。

The Emperor was told this time that his child was a block¹ of wood. He could no longer contain himself, but ordered a small shed² to be built near the chief mosque, and the Queen to be confined³ in it, subject⁴ to the scorn⁵ of those who passed by. This cruelty she bore with such meekness⁶ that all who judged of things better than the vulgar⁷ admired and pitied her.

II

In the meantime the keeper of the gardens and his wife brought⁸ up the Princes and the Princess as tenderly⁹ as if they had been their own children. As they advanced in age, they all showed marks of superior¹⁰ dignity, and a certain air which could belong only to exalted¹¹ birth. The keeper and his wife gave them names which had been borne by rulers of the kingdom,—to the eldest, Bahman,¹² to the second, Perviz,¹³ and to the Princess, Perie-zadeh.¹⁴

Both the Princes and the Princess were quick to learn all that their masters¹⁵ taught them, not only in books, but in exercises¹⁶ of the body, such as riding and bending the bow. The sister, unwilling to be outdone, often outdid her brothers in various contests¹⁷ of skill. The keeper of the gardens, delighted to find all the expense in the training of his adopted¹⁸ children so well¹⁹ repaid, resolved to do still

¹Block of wood. 木塊. ²Shed, 低小之屋; 棚. ³Confined, 幽閉; 拘禁. ⁴Subject to, 受. ⁵Scorn, 輕賤; 羞辱. ⁶Meekness, 溫柔; 和順. ⁷Vulgar, 鄙俚 (the vulgar, 鄙夫). ⁸Brought up, 養育. ⁹Tenderly, 慈愛. ¹⁰Superior dignity, 加人一等之尊嚴; 威儀勝人. superior, 超越尋常. dignity, 儀態之尊嚴; 威儀. ¹¹Exalted birth, 高門; 右族. birth, 所從出; 門第. ¹²Bahman (bā/man), 人名. ¹³Perviz (pēr/viz), 人名. ¹⁴Perie-zadeh (pě/rī-zā/dě), 人名. ¹⁵Masters, 師傅. ¹⁶Exercises of the body, 身體之運動. ¹⁷Contests, 比賽; 競爭. ¹⁸Adopted children, 養子; 養女. ¹⁹Well repaid, 報酬豐富 (謂教育所費, 均得實效, 並非虛耗也).

more for them. He had been content with his lodge at the entrance of the garden, but now purchased a countryseat¹ near the city, furnished it in the richest manner, and stocked² its park³ with deer, that the Princes and Princess might divert themselves with hunting when they chose.

To this place, in⁴ view of his advancing⁵ years, the Emperor permitted him to retire. His wife had been dead for some time, and he himself had not lived in his new abode more than six months, when he was surprised by so sudden a death that he had not time to give the Princes Babman and Perviz and the Princess Perie-zadeh the least account of the manner in which he had saved them from destruction.⁶ They had known no other father, and mourned him as such, with all the honor which love and filial⁷ gratitude could prompt.⁸ Satisfied with the large fortune he had left them, they lived together in perfect union,⁹ free from desire for greatness at court, or places of honor, which they might easily have had.

One day when the two Princes were hunting and the Princess had remained at home, an old devout¹⁰ woman came to the gate at the hour for prayers, and asked leave to go in and say hers. The Princess ordered the servants to show¹¹ her into the oratory,¹² and when her prayers were done, the woman was brought before Perie-zadeh in a great hall, more beautiful and rich than any other part of the house. When they had talked a little while, the Princess asked her what she thought of the house, and how she liked it.

¹ Countryseat, 別墅. ² Stocked, 充實. ³ Park, 園. ⁴ In view of, 歸於; 見. ⁵ Advancing years, 高年; 老邁. ⁶ Destruction, 死亡. ⁷ Filial gratitude, 孝思. ⁸ Prompt, 喚起; 激起. ⁹ Union, 和睦. ¹⁰ Devout woman, 女修道士; 尼. ¹¹ Show, 度誠; 敬拜的. ¹² Oratory, 腳藏室.

"Madam," answered the devout woman, "if I may speak my mind freely, it lacks but three things to make it complete and beyond¹ compare. The first of these is the speaking bird, so strange a creature that it draws² round it all the singing birds near by, which come to accompany its song. The second is the singing tree, the leaves of which are so many mouths, which form an harmonious³ concert of different voices, and never cease. The third is the yellow water, of a gold color, a single drop of which being poured into a vessel properly prepared, increases⁴ so as to fill it at once, and rises up in the middle like a fountain, which always plays, and yet the basin never overflows.⁵

"Ah, my good mother," cried the Princess, "how much I thank you for the knowledge of these marvels, of which I have never heard! Surely you know where they are to be found, and will do me the favor to tell me."

"Madam," replied the good woman, "I am glad to tell you that they are all to be met with in the same spot on the borders of this kingdom, towards India. The road lies before your house, and whoever you send needs but to follow it for twenty days, and on the twentieth let him ask the first person he meets where the speaking bird, the singing tree, and the yellow water are, and he will be informed." After saying this, she departed.

When the Princes returned from hunting they found the Princess Perie-zadeh so silent and pensive⁶ that they thought she must be ill. It was some time before she would answer their questions at all, and then she said:

¹ Beyond compare, 無比; 無匹. ² Draws, 引; 鈎引. ³ Harmonious, 和諧. ⁴ Increases, 增加; 漲. ⁵ Overflows, 溢; 漲. ⁶ Pensive, 沈思.

"I always believed that this house, which our father built us, lacked nothing. But this day I have learned that it wants three rarities,¹—the speaking bird, the singing tree, and the yellow water. If it had these no countryseat in the world could be compared with it." Then she told them what these things were, and asked her brothers to send some trusted person in search of them.

"Sister," replied Prince Bahman, "it is enough that you wish these rarities; I will go for them myself, and set out to-morrow. You, brother, shall stay at home with our sister. I commend² her to your care."

Prince Bahman began at once to prepare for the journey, and learned from his sister the directions³ which the devout woman had left her. The next morning he mounted his horse, and Perviz and the Princess began to bid⁴ him farewell.

"Brother," said the Princess, thinking for the first time of the perils that might lie before him, "who knows whether I shall ever see you again! Alight, I beseech⁵ you, and give⁶ up this journey. I would⁷ rather never behold nor possess the speaking bird, singing tree, and yellow water, than run⁸ the risk of never seeing you more."

"Sister," replied Bahman, "my will is fixed, and you must let me go. Yet, as I may fail, all I can do is to leave you this knife. If, when you pull it out of the sheath,⁹ it is clean as it is now, it will be a sign that I am alive; but if you find it stained¹⁰ with blood, then you may believe me to be dead."

¹ Rarities, 希有之物; 珍奇之物. ² Commend, 託; 委託. ³ Directions, 指示. ⁴ Bid him farewell, 與之言別. ⁵ Beseech, 求; 懇求. ⁶ Give up, 罷; 止. ⁷ Would rather, 寧; 寧願. ⁸ Run the risk, 冒險. ⁹ Sheath, 刀鞘. ¹⁰ Stained, 污.

Then he bade¹ adieu to her and Prince Perviz for the last time, and rode away.

III

When Prince Bahman got into the road, he never turned to the right² hand nor to the left,³ but went directly forward towards India. The twentieth day he saw on the roadside a very singular old man, who sat under a tree near a thatched⁴ house.

His eyebrows and his beard, which grew over his mouth and reached down to his feet, were as white as snow. The nails⁵ of his hands and feet were grown to an immense length; a flat, broad umbrella⁶ covered his head. He wore no clothes, but only a mat thrown round his body. The old man was a Dervish,⁷ long retired from the world.

Prince Bahman had been expecting all that morning to meet some one who would tell him the way to the place he sought, and saluted the Dervish with pleasant words. But the answer could not be understood, and Prince Bahman saw that the trouble arose from the hair hanging over the old man's mouth. As he was unwilling to go any farther without the instructions⁸ he wanted, he got off his horse, pulled out a⁹ pair of scissors, and said:

"Good Dervish, I want some talk with you, but your hair prevents my hearing what you say. If you will consent, I will cut off some part of it, and of your eyebrows,¹⁰ which make you look more like a bear than a man."

¹ Bade adieu, 辭別. ² Right hand, 右手; 右邊. ³ Left, 左手; 左邊.
⁴ Thatched house, 草舍; 茅屋. ⁵ Nails, 指甲. ⁶ Umbrella, 傘.
⁷ Dervish (dêr/vish), 昔回教修道士; 回教隱士. ⁸ Instructions, 指導; 指示. ⁹ A pair of scissors, 一把剪刀. ¹⁰ Eyebrows, 眉; 眉毛.

The Dervish did not oppose¹ the offer, and smiled when the Prince said to him at last: "You are now a man, but before nobody could tell what you were."

"Sir,²" said the Dervish, "I am ready to show my gratitude, in any way. Tell me how I may serve you."

Then Prince Bahman asked him the way to find the speaking bird, the singing tree, and the yellow water. While he spoke, the old man's face became grave, and at first he made no answer. But Prince Bahman urged him to speak, and at last he said:

"Sir, I know the way you ask of me, but the dangers are greater than you suppose. Many gentlemen as brave as yourself have asked me this question, and not one of them has come back. Therefore, if you would not perish,³ take my advice. Go no farther, but return home."

"Nothing shall turn me back," said Prince Bahman in reply; "whoever attacks me, I am brave and well armed."

"But your foes⁴ will be unseen," said the Dervish, "and how can you defend yourself from such?"

"No matter," said the Prince, "since you know the way, tell it to me."

When the Dervish found that he could not move Prince Bahman from his purpose, he took a bowl⁵ out of a bag that lay by him, and said:

"Since you will not be led by my advice, take this bowl; when you have mounted your horse, throw it before you, and follow it to the foot of the mountain. When the bowl stops there, alight, leave your horse with the bridle over his

¹ Oppose the offer, 反對其所爲之事。 ² Sir, 丈; 長者 (稱人之辭, 如通俗之言先生, 初不必其人年事之較長也)。 ³ Perish, 死。 ⁴ Foes, 敵人 (此字與 enemy 之義不同, enemy 尚有可與和好之希望, foe 則不然, 詳見英語枝字辨異)。 ⁵ Bowl, 碗。

neck, and he will stand in the same place till you return. As you ascend, you will see about you a great number of large black stones, and will hear on all sides many voices, uttering a¹ thousand threats² to keep³ you from reaching the top of the mountain. Be not afraid; but above all things, do not turn your head to look behind you, for in that instant you will be changed into such a black stone as those you see, which are all youths⁴ who have failed in this quest.⁵ If you escape this danger, of which I give you but a faint⁶ idea, and get to the top of the mountain, you will see a cage,⁷ and in that cage is the bird you seek; ask him which are the singing tree and the yellow water, and he will tell you. I have nothing more to say, except to beg you once more to turn back."

After these words, the Prince mounted his horse and threw the bowl before him. It rolled away so swiftly that he had to put his horse to a gallop to keep it in sight, and when it had reached the foot of the mountain it stopped. The Prince alighted, laid the bridle on his horse's neck, saw the black stones of which the Dervish had told him, and began to ascend. He had not gone four steps before he heard voices, though he could see nobody. Some said, "Where is he going?" "What would he have?" "Do not let him pass;" others, "Stop him!" "Catch him!" "Kill him!" and others, with a voice like thunder, "Thief!" "Murderer!" Others, in a gibing⁹ tone, cried: "No, no; do not hurt him; let the pretty fellow pass; the cage and bird are kept for him."

¹ A thousand, 一千(極言其多也). ² Threats, 威嚇; 脅迫之辭.
³ Keep, 阻止. ⁴ Youths, 少年人; 青年. ⁵ Quest, 尋求(謂求上文之三寶也). ⁶ Faint idea, 大略. ⁷ Cage, 籠. ⁸ Murderer, 殺人之徒.
⁹ Gibing, 嘲笑; 譏笑.

In spite of all these voices, Prince Bahman went on with courage for some time, but at length there was so loud a din¹ near him, behind, before, and on all sides, that he was seized² with dread, his legs trembled under him, he staggered³ and, finding that his strength failed him, he forgot the Dervish's advice, turned about to run down the hill, and that instant was changed into a black stone. At the same moment his horse was changed likewise.

From the time Prince Bahman left home the Princess Perie-zadeh always wore the knife and sheath in her girdle, and pulled it out several times a day, to know whether her brother were yet alive. She found that he was in perfect health, and talked of him often with Prince Perviz.

On the twentieth day, as they were talking thus, the Prince asked his sister to pull out the knife to know how their brother did. When she saw the blood run down the point,⁴ she was seized with horror and threw it down.

"Ah, my poor brother," cried she, "woe⁵ is me! I have caused your death, and shall never see you more! Why did I tell you of the speaking bird, the singing tree, and the yellow water, or w⁶ did I listen to the idle⁶ tales of a silly old woman?"

IV

Prince Perviz was as much distressed as the Princess at their brother's death, but he knew how greatly she still desired to possess the speaking bird, the singing tree, and the golden water, and resolved to set out on the morrow⁷ to obtain them.

¹ Din, 大聲。 ² Seized with dread, 爲恐懼之心所乘; 驚慌失措。
³ Staggered, 趑趄: 舉步時立足不穩。 ⁴ Point, 刀尖。 ⁵ Woe is me! =
 Woe is (to) me (感嘆語), 痛哉; 甚矣, 吾之不幸; 吾之殃禍, 竟至斯乎。
⁶ Idle tales, 無益之談。 ⁷ Morrow, 次日; 翌日。

The Princess did what she could to dissuade¹ him, but in vain. Before he went, he left her a² string of a hundred pearls, telling her that if they would not run³ when she should count them upon the string, but remain fixed, that would be a certain sign that he had met the fate of their brother, but that, he hoped, would never be.

On the twentieth day he met the Dervish and asked the same question as his brother, Bahman. The old man told him that a young gentleman, who looked very like him had gone by a short time before, and had not yet returned. He warned Prince Perviz, as he had warned his brother, of all the dangers that must be met, and begged him to turn back. But at last, when he saw that the young man could not be moved, he gave him a bowl with the same instructions he had given Prince Bahman, and so let him depart.

The bowl stopped as before at the foot of the mountain, and Prince Perviz began to walk up, with his mind resolved to reach the summit. But before he had gone above six steps he heard a voice which seemed to be near, as of a man behind, saying in a tone of insult:⁴ "Stay,⁵ youth, that I may punish you for your rashness."⁶

Then the Prince forgot the Dervish's advice, clapped his hand upon his sword, and turned about to revenge himself; and he and his horse were changed at once into black stones.

Day after day the Princess Perie-zadeh had counted her pearls, and on the twentieth, instead of moving as they had done, all at once they became firmly fixed, and the token told her surely that the Prince her brother was dead. She had made up her mind what to do if this should happen, and set about the carrying out of her plan at once.

¹ Dissuade, 勸止; 勸阻. ² A string, 一串. ³ Run, 移動. ⁴ Insult, 陵侮. ⁵ Stay, 止; 立定. ⁶ Rashness, 輕躁; 魯莽.

She disguised herself in her brother's robes, told her servants that she would return in two or three days, and, well armed and equipped,¹ mounted her horse the next morning, and took the same road as her brothers.

On the twentieth day she met the Dervish, who urged² her, as strongly as he had urged her brothers, to turn back, and told her of the dangers in³ store for her.

"By what I understand," she said to him when he had finished speaking, "the two difficulties are, first, to reach the cage without being frightened at the terrible din of voices I shall hear; and, second, not to look behind me. For this last caution,⁴ I hope I shall be⁵ mistress enough of myself to heed it. As for the first; if it is permitted, I will stop my ears with cotton,⁶ that the voices, however loud and terrible, may not cause me to lose the use of my reason."⁷

The Dervish did not object⁸ to this plan, and the Princess, throwing down the bowl he gave her, followed it to the foot of the mountain.

Here she alighted, and stopped her ears with cotton. After she had looked well at the path⁹ leading to the summit, she began at a moderate¹⁰ pace, and walked on without fear. She heard the voices, and perceived¹¹ the great service¹² the cotton was to her. The higher she went, the louder and more numerous the voices seemed, but they could make¹³ no impression upon her. At the insulting speeches which she

¹ Equipped, 準備 (謂備帶各種需要之物, 使不致發生缺陷, 因以慣事也). ² Urged, 力勸. ³ In store for her, 留以待彼. ⁴ Caution, 警告. ⁵ Be mistress enough of myself, 足以自制; 不至失其自主之力. ⁶ Cotton, 棉花. ⁷ Reason, 良知; 意識. ⁸ Object, 反對. ⁹ Path, 路; 徑. ¹⁰ Moderate, 平常 (意謂不甚疾亦不甚徐). ¹¹ Perceived, 知. ¹² Service, 用處. ¹³ Make no impression upon her = produce no effect on her mind, 不足以動之. impression, 感動.

did hear, she only laughed. At last she saw the cage and the bird, and at the same moment the clamor¹ and thunders of the voices greatly increased.

The Princess, rejoicing to see the object² of her search, doubled³ her speed, and soon gained the summit of the mountain, where the ground was level.⁴ Then, running directly to the cage, and clapping her hand upon it, she cried: "Bird, I have you, and you shall not escape me." At this moment the voices ceased.

While Perie-zadeh was pulling the cotton out of her ears, the bird said to her: "Heroic⁵ Princess, since I am destined⁶ to be a slave, I would rather be yours than any other person's, since you have obtained me so bravely. From this instant I obey all your commands. I know who you are, for you are not what you seem, and I will one day tell you more. In the meantime, say what you desire, and I am ready to obey you."

"Bird," said Perie-zadeh, "I have been told that there is not far off a golden water, which is very wonderful. Before all things, I ask you to tell me where it is."

The bird showed her the place, which was just⁷ by, and she went and filled a little silver flagon which she had brought with her. Then she returned to the bird and said:

"Bird, this is not enough; I want also the singing tree. Tell me where it is."

"Turn about," said the bird, "and you will see behind you a wood,⁸ where you will find this tree. Break⁹ off a

¹ Clamor, 喧擾之聲; 譁噪. ² Object, 目的物. ³ Doubled, 倍; 加倍.
⁴ Level, 平; 平坦. ⁵ Heroic, 勇. ⁶ Destined, 天定. ⁷ Just by, 即在近旁.
⁸ Wood, 樹林. ⁹ Break off, 折下; 鋸下.

branch, and plant¹ it in your garden; it will take² root as soon as it is put into the earth, and in a little time will grow to a fine tree."

The Princess went into the wood, and by the sweet concert she heard soon found the singing tree. When she had taken one of its branches, she returned again to the bird and said:

"Bird, this is not yet enough. My two brothers, in search for thee, have been changed into black stones on the side of the mountain. Tell me how I may restore them to life."

The bird would say nothing at first, but when the Princess threatened³ to take its life, it bade her sprinkle⁴ every stone on her way down the mountain with a little water from the golden fountain. As she did this, each stone became a man on a horse, fully equipped. Among these men were her brothers, Bahman and Perviz, who exchanged with her the most loving embraces. When she had told them and the band⁵ of noble youths how she had brought them back to life, she bade them follow her to the old Dervish, to thank him for his good advice, which they had all found to be sincere.⁶ But he was dead, whether from old age, or because he was no longer needed. The procession, headed by Peric-zadeh, went on, growing smaller in numbers day by day as the youths who had started with it departed by the roads leading to their various countries.

As soon as the Princess reached home, she placed the cage in the garden; and the bird no sooner began to warble⁷

¹ Plant, 種植. ² Take root, 生根. ³ Threatened to take its life, 以將加殺害恫嚇之. ⁴ Sprinkle, 洒. ⁵ Band, 一羣. ⁶ Sincere, 出於誠意; 毫無詐偽. ⁷ Warble, 鳴.

than he was surrounded by nightingales,¹ larks,² linnets,³ goldfinches,⁴ and every sort of bird in the country. The branch of the tree was no sooner planted than it took root, and in a short time became a large tree, the leaves of which gave as sweet a concert as those of the tree from which it was gathered. A large basin of beautiful marble⁵ was placed in the garden; and when the Princess poured into it all the yellow water from the flagon, it reached at once to the edges of the basin, and afterwards formed in the middle a fountain twenty feet high, which fell again into the basin without ever running⁶ over.

V

The report⁷ of these wonders soon spread⁸ abroad, and many persons came to see and admire them. The two Princes soon took up their old way of living, and one day, when they were hunting two or three leagues⁹ from the house, they chanced to meet with the Emperor of Persia. The respect they paid him with an easy and graceful air, their handsome-mien,¹⁰ and the knowledge, which he soon gained from them, that they were the sons of the former keeper of his gardens, won them his favor at once. This was increased by the skill displayed,¹¹ at his request, in the chase,¹² and by their bearing when they came a few days later to his court. They were loath¹³ to make this visit when the Emperor first demanded it. But when they

¹ Nightingales, 夜鳴鶯. ² Larks, 百靈鳥. ³ Linnets, 紅雀. ⁴ Goldfinches, 金翅雀. ⁵ Marble, 雲石; 大理石. ⁶ Running over, 溢出.

⁷ Report, 傳說; 風聲. ⁸ Spread abroad, 傳播; 外揚. ⁹ Leagues (légz), 英度名 (等於 mile 之三倍). ¹⁰ Mien, 態度. ¹¹ Displayed, 表見.

¹² Chase, 馳逐野獸; 射獵. ¹³ Loath, 不願.

asked their sister's advice about it, she said: "Let us consult the speaking bird;" and the bird said: "The Princes, your brothers, must yield to the Emperor's pleasure, and in their turn invite him to come and see your house."

So the visit to the court was paid. As the Princes entered the city, many of the people wished that the Emperor had two such handsome sons; and the Emperor himself was so pleased with their wit and good judgment¹ that he said: "Were² they my own children, and suitably educated, they could not have been better trained. When they left the court, they begged the Emperor that he would visit them and their sister, of whom they had already told him, when next the hunt³ should bring him near them.

"Our house," they said, "is not worthy your presence; but monarchs sometimes have taken⁴ shelter in a cottage."⁵

"My children," he answered, "your house cannot be other than beautiful, and worthy of its owners. My pleasure in seeing it will be the greater for having for my hosts you and your sister, who is already dear to me from what you have said of her. Meet me to-morrow morning at the place where I first saw you."

The Princes returned home and told their sister of the favor with which they had been received, and of the visit that was to be paid them in the morning.

"Then we must think," said the Princess, "of preparing a repast fit⁶ for his majesty. Let us consult the speaking bird, he will tell us, perhaps, what meats the Emperor likes best."

¹ Judgment, 判斷力; 見解. ² Were they = if they were. ³ Hunt. 獵犬; 打圍; 畋遊. ⁴ Taken shelter, 暫住 (如避風雨之類). ⁵ Cottage, 小屋; 草舍.

When the bird was asked this question, his answer was:

“Good mistress, you have excellent cooks: let them do the best they can; but, above all things, let them prepare a dish of cucumbers¹ stuffed full of pearls, which must be set before the Emperor in the first² course before all the other dishes.”

“Cucumbers stuffed full of pearls!” cried Princess Perie-zadeh amazed. “It is an unheard-of³ dish! Besides, all the pearls I possess would not be enough.”

Then the bird told her where the pearls would be found, by digging under a certain tree in the park early the next morning. Here, indeed, she found plenty of pearls for the purpose, and took them to the head cook, for she and her brothers had agreed that the bird’s advice must be closely⁴ followed. The cook was as much amazed at his order as the Princess had been, but took the pearls, and in the morning everything was ready for the Emperor’s coming.

The next morning the Princes met him early in the forest, and when the heat⁵ of the day obliged⁶ them to leave off the chase, they made their way to the house, where the Princess Perie-zadeh was waiting to receive them. She threw herself at the Emperor’s feet, but he stooped⁷ to raise her, and gazing for some time at her beauty, said:

“The brothers are worthy of the sister, and she is worthy of them. I hope to know you better, my daughter, when I have seen the house.”

¹ Cucumbers, 胡瓜; 黃瓜. ² First course, 第一道; 第一次所上之菜; 第一次所進之食. ³ Unheard-of, 向所未聞; 未之前聞. ⁴ Closely followed, 謹遵; 確守. ⁵ Heat of the day, 日之光熱. ⁶ Obligated, 迫. ⁷ Stooped, 屈身; 折腰.

Then the Emperor was led through the rooms. "My daughter," said he, "do you call this a country house? The finest and largest cities would soon be deserted¹ if all country houses were like yours. I do not wonder that you despise² the town. Now let me see the garden."

Here he was first amazed by the concert which he heard, without being able to see any players.³ "It is the singing tree," said Perie-zadeh; "it came to me at the same time with the yellow water and the speaking bird, which your majesty may see after you have rested yourself."

When he had looked more closely at the singing tree, and in his surprise asked many questions about it, he could not rest without seeing the yellow water and the speaking bird. The beauty and wonder of the fountain, rising from a basin of one entire stone, fed⁴ by no spring,⁵ but formed, as the Princess told him, from the contents⁶ of one small flagon, held him as⁷ if spellbound. "I must come often and see this," he said at last; "but now let us go and see the speaking bird."

Its cage was hung in one of the windows of the hall, and, when they drew near to the place, the Emperor asked why the trees near by were all filled with warbling birds, yet none were in the other trees of the garden. The Princess answered:

"They come from all parts to accompany the song of the speaking bird. If you attend, you will hear that his notes⁸ are sweeter than those of any of the other birds, even the nightingale's."

¹ Deserted, 捨棄; 闕寂無人. ² Despise, 輕視; 厭惡; 不喜. ³ Players, 奏樂者; 樂工; 樂人. ⁴ Fed, 灌注. ⁵ Spring, 泉水. ⁶ Contents, 容量. ⁷ As if spellbound, 如爲魔術所制者然; 心志迷惑. ⁸ Notes, 音調.

The Emperor entered the hall; and, as the bird continued singing, the Princess raised her voice, and said: "My slave, here is the Emperor; pay your compliments to him."

The bird left¹ off singing that instant, when all the other birds ceased also; then it said: "God² save the Emperor. May³ he long live!" The repast was served at the sofa near the window where the bird was placed, and the Emperor replied, as he was taking his seat: "Bird, I thank you, and am rejoiced to find in you the sultan and king of birds."

As soon as the Emperor saw the dish of cucumbers before him, he reached out his hand, and took one; but when he had cut it was in extreme surprise to find it stuffed with pearls.

"What novelty⁴ is this?" he said; "and why were these cucumbers stuffed thus with pearls, since pearls are not to be eaten?"

He looked at the two Princes and Princess to ask them the meaning, when the bird, breaking⁵ in, said:

"Can your majesty be so greatly surprised at cucumbers stuffed with pearls, which you see with your own eyes, and yet so easily believe that the Queen your wife was the mother of a dog, a cat, and a piece of wood?"

"I believed these things," replied the Emperor, "because the nurses assured me of the facts."⁶

"Those nurses, sire," replied the bird, "were the Queen's two sisters, envious⁷ of the honors you bestowed⁸ upon her,

¹ Left off, 未畢而止; 中止. ² God save the Emperor, 天眷吾王.
³ May he long live, 願王萬歲無疆. ⁴ Novelty, 新奇之物. ⁵ Breaking in, 插嘴 (謂不俟問及而答也). ⁶ Facts, 事實. ⁷ Envious of, 妒忌.
⁸ Bestowed up on, 加; 賜與.

and burning¹ for revenge. If you examine them, they will confess their crime. The two brothers and the sister whom you see before you are your own children, exposed by them, and saved by the keeper of your gardens, who adopted and brought up the children as his own."

"Bird," cried the Emperor, "I believe the truth which you reveal² to me. The feeling which drew me to them told me plainly that they must be my own kin.³ Come, then, my sons, come, my daughter, let me embrace you, and give you the first marks of a father's tender⁴ love."

Weeping tears of joy they embraced one another. The Emperor finished his meal in haste, and said: "My children, to-morrow I will bring the Queen your mother; therefore make ready to receive her."

He set out at once for the city, where the first thing he did was to order the Queen's two sisters to be put to death. Then, followed by many lords of his court, he went to the great mosque, and called forth the Queen from the shed where she had languished⁵ so many years, and, embracing her in her wretched plight before all the people, told her with tears in his eyes how he had been deceived, and begged forgiveness for the wrong he had done her. "Soon," he said, "you shall see the Princes and the Princess, our lovely children. Come, and take your former rank, with all the honors which are your due."⁶

The glad news spread quickly through the city, and early the next morning the Emperor and the Queen, whose mournful⁷ dress had been changed for rich robes, set out

¹ Burning for, 急欲 (謂不可復耐也). ² Reveal, 揭穿; 啓示; 洩露.
³ Kin, 親支; 血屬. ⁴ Tender, 慈. ⁵ Languished 憔悴. ⁶ Due, 應得.
⁷ Mournful dress, 素服 (尋常居喪者所服, 謂波斯后幽囚時所御之服也).

with all their court for the house of the Princes Bahman and Perviz and the Princess Perie-zadeh.

“These, much injured¹ wife,” said the Emperor, “are our children. Embrace them tenderly, since they are worthy both of me and of you.”

When they had all finished the splendid repast prepared for them, and had marveled at the singing tree and the yellow fountain, and, most of all, at the speaking bird, the entire company returned to the city in joyful procession. Crowds of people came out to meet them with cries of joy. All eyes were fixed not only upon the Queen, the two Princes and the Princess, but also upon the bird, which the Princess carried before her in a cage; and every one admired his sweet notes which had drawn all the other birds to follow him, flying from tree to tree in the country, and from one housetop² to another in the city.

With this pomp the Princes Bahman and Perviz and the Princess Perie-zadeh were brought at length to the palace, and nothing was heard all that night but rejoicings,³ both in the palace and in the utmost parts of the city, and these lasted⁴ many days, and extended⁵ throughout the empire⁶ of Persia.

¹Injured, 受委曲. ²Housetop, 屋頂. ³Rejoicings, 歡聲.
⁴Lasted many days, 歷數日之久. ⁵Extended, 延及. ⁶Empire, 帝國.

XI

THE STORY OF SINDBAD¹ THE SAILOR²

In the reign of the same Caliph, Haroun al Raschid, of whom we have already heard, there lived at Bagdad a poor porter³ called Hindbad.⁴ One day, when the weather⁵ was very hot, he was⁶ employed to carry a heavy burden from one end of the town to the other. Being much fatigued,⁷ he took off his load,⁸ and sat upon it, near a large mansion.⁹

He was much pleased that he stopped at this place, for the air was completely filled with the pleasant scent¹⁰ of wood¹¹ of aloes and rose¹² water, wafted¹³ from the house. Besides, he heard from within a concert of sweet music, mixed with the notes of nightingales and other birds. There was also the smell¹⁴ of several sorts of savory¹⁵ dishes, and Hindbad³ was sure there must be a great feast within. He knew not to whom the mansion belonged, and asked one of the servants standing by the gate in rich apparel.¹⁶

"How," replied the servant, "do you live in Bagdad, and know not that this is the house of Sindbad the Sailor, the famous¹⁷ voyager¹⁸ who has sailed¹⁹ around the world?"

¹ Sinbad (sind/bād), 人名. ² Sailor, 航海家. ³ Porter, 挑夫; 脚夫. ⁴ Hindbad (hind/bād), 人名. ⁵ Weather, 天氣. ⁶ Was employed, 受僱; 受人僱用. ⁷ Fatigued, 疲倦. ⁸ Load, 肩負之物. ⁹ Mansion, 大宅; 邸第. ¹⁰ Scent, 香氣. ¹¹ Wood of aloes, 沉香. ¹² Rose water, 玫瑰水. ¹³ Wafted, 飄揚; 吹出. ¹⁴ Smell, 氣味; 香味. ¹⁵ Savory dishes, 香美之食品. ¹⁶ Apparel, 服飾. ¹⁷ Famous, 著名. ¹⁸ Voyager, 航海者. ¹⁹ Sailed around the world, 環行地球; 周歷全球. sailed, 航行.

The porter lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, loud enough to be heard,—

“Almighty¹ Creator of all things, consider the difference between Sindbad and me! Every day I suffer fatigue and distress, and can scarce get coarse² barley bread for myself and my family, whilst happy Sindbad freely spends vast³ riches, and leads a life of unbroken⁴ pleasure. What has he done to obtain from Thee⁵ a lot⁶ so agreeable? And what have I done to deserve one so wretched?”

While the porter was speaking thus, a servant came out of the house, and, taking him by the arm, made him enter, for Sindbad, his master, wanted to speak to him. He was led into a great hall, where many people sat round a table covered with all sorts of savory dishes. At the upper end sat a comely,⁷ venerable⁸ gentleman, with a long white beard; and behind him stood a number of officers and servants, all ready to attend his pleasure. This person was Sindbad. Hindbad was much abashed, and saluted the company trembling. But Sindbad seated him at his right hand and served him himself with excellent wine.

Now Sindbad had heard the porter's complaint⁹ through the window, and this it was that led him to send for Hindbad. When the feast was over, Sindbad addressed him, asking his name and employment,¹⁰ and said: “I wish to hear from your own mouth what you said just now in the street.”

Hindbad hung his head in shame, and answered:

¹ Almighty Creator of all things, 創造萬物之全能之主宰. almighty, 全能. creator, 創造者. ² Coarse, 粗. ³ Vast, 極大. ⁴ Unbroken, 不斷; 相繼不絕. ⁵ Thee, 指上帝. ⁶ Lot, 運命. ⁷ Comely, 儀態都雅. ⁸ Venerable, 高年; 可敬. ⁹ Complaint, 怨言. ¹⁰ Employment, 職業.

"My lord, I confess that my fatigue put me out¹ of humor, and, for the rash² words I uttered,³ I beg your pardon."⁴

"Do not think me so unjust,⁵" said Sindbad, "as to resent⁶ them. But I must set⁷ you right about myself. You think, no doubt, that I gained without labor or trouble the ease I now enjoy. Do not mistake;⁸ before attaining⁹ this estate I suffered for several years more trouble of body and mind than can well be imagined. Yes, gentlemen," he added, turning to the whole company, "what I have endured¹⁰ would cure the greatest miser¹¹ of his love of riches; and with your leave I will relate to you the dangers I have met."

The First Voyage of Sindbad the Sailor

My father was a rich merchant of good fame. He left me a large estate, which I wasted in riotous¹² living. I quickly saw my error,¹³ especially in misspending¹⁴ my time, which is of all things the most valuable. I remembered the saying¹⁵ of the great Solomon, which I had often heard from my father: "A¹⁶ good name is better than precious ointment," and again: "Wisdom¹⁷ is good with an inheritance." I

¹ Out of humor, 不樂; 煩懣; 使氣. ² Rash words, 不謹之詞.
³ Uttered, 說; 出口. ⁴ Pardon, 恕; 原宥. ⁵ Unjust, 不公道. ⁶ Resent, 怒.
⁷ Set you right, 使汝不致誤會; 矯正汝之謬見. ⁸ Mistake, 誤會.
⁹ Attaining this estate, 得此產業; 到此地位. attaining, 獲得 (辛苦而得, 非垂手而得者也). ¹⁰ Endured, 受; 忍受. ¹¹ Miser, 守財虜; 儉不中禮之徒.
¹² Riotous, 放縱. ¹³ Error, 錯; 誤. ¹⁴ Misspending, 誤用; 虛耗.
¹⁵ Saying, 箴言; 格言. ¹⁶ A good name is better than precious ointment, 令名尤勝於名貴之油 (油爲事神之物, 必求其美, 然普人神必享之, 求名油者, 不如修令名也, 又名油爲世所珍, 普人爲人所親, 二者相較, 令名實勝, 二解皆通). ¹⁷ Wisdom is good with an inheritance, 有財產者, 宜有智慧 (謂有智慧, 乃能善用其財產也). inheritance, 受之祖父之財產; 先世遺產.

resolved to walk¹ in my father's ways, and embarked² with some merchants on³ board a ship we had fitted⁴ out together.

We steered⁵ our course⁶ towards the Indies.⁷ At first I was troubled with seasickness,⁸ but speedily regained⁹ my health. In our voyage we touched¹⁰ at several islands,¹¹ where we sold or exchanged our goods. One day, whilst under¹² sail, we were becalmed¹³ near a small island rising but little above the level¹⁴ of the water and resembling¹⁵ a green meadow.¹⁶ The captain¹⁷ permitted such persons as were so inclined¹⁸ to land;¹⁹ of this number I was one. But whilst we were eating and drinking, and resting from the fatigue of the sea, the island of²⁰ a sudden trembled and shook us terribly.

The trembling of the island was soon noticed on board the ship, and we were called to reëmbark²¹ quickly, or we should all be lost;²² for what we took to be an island proved to be the back of a sea²³ monster. The nimblest²⁴ got into the sloop;²⁵ others betook²⁶ themselves to swimming; as for me, I was still upon the island when it sank into the sea, and I had only time to catch hold of a piece of wood that we brought from the ship to make a fire. Meanwhile the

¹ Walk in my father's ways, 遵父之遺軌而行; 紹箕紹裘; 無改於父之道; 承先人之業. ² Embarked, 乘(船). ³ On board, 在(船)上.
⁴ Fitted out, 預備. ⁵ Steered, 定航行方向. ⁶ Course, 航路. ⁷ Indies (in/diz), 印度羣島. ⁸ Seasickness, 暈船. ⁹ Regained my health, 復元. ¹⁰ Touched at, 途經; 小駐(謂暫停即去也). ¹¹ Islands, 島.
¹² Under sail, 揚帆; 駛行. ¹³ Becalmed, 因風息而舟不能行(航船利用風力, 無風則不得行也). ¹⁴ Level of the water, 水平; 水平線; 水面.
¹⁵ Resembling, 似; 彷彿. ¹⁶ Meadow, 草地. ¹⁷ Captain, 船主.
¹⁸ Inclined, 有意; 願. ¹⁹ Land, 登岸. ²⁰ Of a sudden = suddenly, 忽然; 突然. ²¹ Reëmbark, 重行登船; 回船. ²² Lost, 死; 喪亡. ²³ Sea monster, 海怪. ²⁴ Nimblest, 最敏捷者. ²⁵ Sloop, 單桅船. ²⁶ Betook themselves to, 從事於.

captain, having taken the others on board, resolved to make¹ the most of the favoring gale that had just risen, and sailed away.

Thus was I left² to the mercy of the waves for the rest of the day and the night that followed. By this time I found my strength gone, and was despairing of my life, when happily a wave threw me against an island. The bank was high and rugged,³ but some roots of trees helped me to get up. When the sun arose, I was very feeble,⁴ but managed⁵ to find some herbs⁶ that were fit to eat, and a spring of good water. Thus refreshed,⁷ I advanced farther into the island, and reached a fine plain, where I saw some horses feeding. As I went towards them, I heard the voice of a man who appeared and asked me who I was. When I had told him my adventure, he led me by the hand into a cave, where there were several other people, no less amazed to see me than I was to see them.

I partook of some food which they gave me, and then learned that they were grooms belonging to the sovereign⁸ of the island, where they brought the king's horses every year for pasturage.⁹ They were to return home on the morrow, and had I been one day later I must have perished, because the inhabited¹⁰ part of the island was far off, and I could never have reached it without a guide.

The next morning they took me to the capital¹¹ of the island, and presented¹² me to the sovereign. When at his

¹ Make the most of the favoring gale, 趁順風. make the most of, 十分利用之. favoring gale, 順風. ² Left to the mercy of the waves, 委身波瀾之中: 託性命於鴻濛 (謂生死之權, 全操之於波瀾, 海若有情, 則生命尚可希冀). mercy, 仁慈. ³ Rugged, 凹凸不平. ⁴ Feeble, 弱; 力薄. ⁵ Managed, 設法. ⁶ Herbs, 草. ⁷ Refreshed, (精神) 復振. ⁸ Sovereign, 君主. ⁹ Pasturage, 放畜; 放牧. ¹⁰ Inhabited part, 有人居住之處. ¹¹ Capital, 國都; 京城. ¹² Presented, 引... 見.

request I told him of my misfortune, he was much concerned,¹ and gave orders that I should want² for nothing; and his commands were carefully fulfilled.

As a merchant I met with many men of my own profession,³ and sought news from Bagdad and the opportunity⁴ to return; for the capital of the island has a fine harbor,⁵ where ships arrive daily from many quarters of the world. I took delight also in hearing the talk of learned⁶ Indians, and withal⁷ paid⁸ my court to the sovereign, and met with the governors⁹ and petty¹⁰ kings that were subject to him, telling and learning much.

There belongs to this king an island named Cassel,¹¹ where the mariners¹² said that every night the noise of drums might be heard. This wonderful place I visited, and on the way thither saw fishes of one hundred and two hundred cubits¹³ in length, that occasion¹⁴ more fear than hurt; for they are so timid¹⁵ that they will fly¹⁶ upon the rattling¹⁷ of two sticks or boards.¹⁸ I saw likewise other fishes, about a cubit in length, that had heads like owls.¹⁹

One day, as I was at the port²⁰ after this visit, the ship arrived in which I had embarked at Bussorah.²¹ I knew the captain at once, and went and asked him for my bales.²² "I am Sindbad," said I, "and those bales marked with his name are mine."

¹ Concerned, 關切. ² Want for nothing, 無所缺乏. ³ Profession, 行業. ⁴ Opportunity, 機會. ⁵ Harbor, 海港. ⁶ Learned (lūr/néd), 博學多聞. ⁷ Withal, 亦. ⁸ Paid my court to, 謹事. ⁹ Governors, 督臣. ¹⁰ Petty kings, 諸侯; 屬國之君. petty, 小. ¹¹ Cassel (kās'1), 地名. ¹² Mariners, 航海者. ¹³ Cubits, 度名 (等於英度八寸). ¹⁴ Occasion (作 cause 解), 致; 激起. ¹⁵ Timid, 膽小; 怯. ¹⁶ Fly, 飛逃; 疾遁. ¹⁷ Rattling, 擊. ¹⁸ Boards, 板. ¹⁹ Owls, 貓頭鷹; 鴞. ²⁰ Port, 海口; 商埠. ²¹ Bussorah (bōō/sō-rā), 地名. ²² Bales, 包; 貨包.

"Heavens!¹" he exclaimed, "whom can we trust in these times? I saw Sindbad perish with my own eyes, and now you tell this tale to possess yourself of what does not belong to you."²

But at length he was persuaded that I was no cheat,³ for there came people from his ship who knew me, and expressed much joy at seeing me alive. "Heaven be praised," said he at last, "for your happy escape! There are your goods; take and do with them as you please."

What was of greatest worth in them I presented to the sovereign, who was much pleased to hear of my good fortune, and gave me in return a gift of still greater value. Then I took⁴ leave of him, and went aboard⁵ the same ship after I had exchanged my goods for products⁶ of that country. I carried with me wood of aloes, sandal,⁷ camphire,⁸ nutmegs,⁹ cloves,¹⁰ pepper,¹¹ and ginger.¹² We passed by several islands, and at last arrived at Bussorah, whence I came to this city with great wealth.

Here Sindbad stopped, and gave Hindbad a purse of money, bidding him return the next day, and hear the story of the next voyage. This was repeated¹³ each day, till all the voyages were described.¹⁴

The Second Voyage of Sindbad the Sailor

After my first voyage, I meant to spend the rest of my days at Bagdad, but I soon grew weary¹⁴ of an idle life, and

¹ Heavens. 天乎 (此嘆語, 表驚駭之意). ² Cheat. 欺騙者; 騙子.
³ Took leave of, 別; 告辭. ⁴ Aboard, 上 (船). ⁵ Products, 出產; 產物.
⁶ Sandals, 檀香 (= sandalwood). ⁷ Camphire (kām/fir) 或作 camphor (kām/fēr), 樟腦. ⁸ Nutmegs, 豆蔻. ⁹ Cloves, 丁香.
¹⁰ Pepper, 胡椒. ¹¹ Ginger, 薑. ¹² Repeated each day, 每日如此.
¹³ Described, 敘述; 詳述. ¹⁴ Weary, 厭倦.

put¹ to sea a second time, with merchants of known² honesty. We embarked on board a good ship, and, after committing³ ourselves to God, set sail. We traded³ from island to island with great profit. One day we landed on an island where we could see neither man nor animal. There were many fruits and flowers, and whilst some were gathering them, I took my wine and food, and sat down near a stream betwixt⁴ two high trees, which formed a thick⁵ shade. I made a good meal, and afterwards fell asleep. I cannot tell how long I slept, but when I awoke the ship was gone.

In this sad plight, I was ready to die with grief. I cried out in agony,⁶ beat my head and breast, and threw myself upon the ground, where I lay some time in despair. Why was I not content with the produce⁷ of my first voyage, which would have kept me in comfort all my life? But it was too late to repent.⁸ At last I resigned⁹ myself to the will of God. Not knowing what to do, I climbed to the top of a lofty tree, where I could look about on all sides for signs of hope. Towards the sea there was nothing but sky and water. Looking over the land, I saw something white, and, coming down, took some of the food I had left, and went towards it, not knowing at the great distance what it was.

As I drew near, I thought it to be a white dome of enormous size; and when I touched¹⁰ it I found it to be very smooth.¹¹ There was no opening on any side, and there was

¹ Put to sea, 航海; 放洋. ² Known, 著名. ³ Traded, 貿易; 買賣.
⁴ Betwixt (作 between 解), 在 . . . (二物) 之間. ⁵ Thick shade, 密蔭.
⁶ Agony, 悲苦. ⁷ Produce, 出息; 收穫. ⁸ Repent, 懊悔.
⁹ Resigned myself to the will of God, 委生死於天命. ¹⁰ Touched, 觸; 摸. ¹¹ Smooth, 滑澤; 光.

no climbing to the top over the smooth surface. It was at least fifty paces round.

By this time the¹ sun was about to set, and all of a sudden the sky became as dark as if it had been covered with a thick cloud. I was amazed at this sudden darkness, but much more when I found it was caused by a bird of monstrous² size, that came flying towards me. I remembered that I had often heard mariners speak of a marvelous bird called the roc, and felt sure that the great dome by which I stood must be its egg. In short, the bird alighted and sat over the egg. As I saw her coming, I crept³ close to the egg, so that I had before me one of the legs of the bird, which was as big as the trunk⁴ of a tree. I tied myself strongly to it with my turban, in hopes that the roc next morning would carry me with her out of this desert⁵ island. After having passed the night in this condition, the bird flew away as soon as it was daylight, and carried me so high that I could not see the earth. Then she descended with so much speed that I lost my senses. But when I found myself on the ground, I quickly untied the knot, and had scarcely done so when the roc, having taken up a serpent⁶ of monstrous length in her bill,⁷ flew away.

The spot where I was left was surrounded on all sides by mountains, that seemed to reach above the clouds, and so steep that I could not possibly get out of the valley.⁸ It seemed to me that the place was no better than the desert island from which the roc had brought me.

As I walked through the valley, I found it strewed⁹ with diamonds of¹⁰ a surprising bigness. But the pleasure

¹The sun was about to set, 日將西沉. ²Monstrous, 異常巨大.
³Crept, 爬; 匍匐. ⁴Trunk of a tree, 樹幹. ⁵Desert island, 荒島.
⁶Serpent, 巨蛇. ⁷Bill, 鳥喙; 鳥嘴. ⁸Valley, 谷; 山谷. ⁹Strewed, 散布; 滿布. ¹⁰Of a surprising bigness, 其大驚人; 極大.

of looking at them was soon destroyed by another sight, which filled me with terror, namely,¹ a great number of serpents, so monstrous that the least of them could swallow² an elephant.³ In the daytime they hid in their dens⁴ from their enemy, the roc, and came out only in the night.

I spent the day in walking about in the valley. When night came I went into a cave where I thought I might rest in safety. I closed the low and narrow entrance with a great stone, to preserve me from the serpents, but did not shut out all the light. Soon the serpents began hissing⁵ around me and put me in such extreme fear that I could not sleep. When day appeared the serpents retired, and I came out of the cave trembling. I can justly say that I walked upon diamonds without feeling any desire to touch them. At last I sat down, and ate some of my food, and, in spite of my fears, fell asleep, for I had not closed my eyes during the night. Scarcely were they shut when something that fell by me with a great noise awoke me. This was a large piece of raw⁶ meat; and at the same time, I saw several others fall down from the rocks in different places.

I had never believed what I had heard sailors and others tell of the valley of diamonds, and of the means⁷ employed by merchants to obtain jewels from it. But now I found that I had heard the truth. For the fact is, that merchants come to this valley when the eagles⁸ have young ones, and throw great joints⁹ of meat into it; the diamonds, upon whose points they fall, stick to them; the eagles, which are stronger in this country than anywhere else, pounce with great force upon these pieces of meat, and

¹ Namely, 卽; 卽是. ² Swallow, 吞. ³ Elephant, 象. ⁴ Dens, 穴; 窟. ⁵ Hissing, 瑟瑟然作聲 (謂蛇鳴也). ⁶ Raw meat, 生肉. ⁷ Means, 方法. ⁸ Eagles, 鷹. ⁹ Joints of meat, 大塊之肉.

carry them to their nests on the edge of the rocks to feed their young; then the merchants run to their nests, drive off the eagles by their shouts, and take away the diamonds that stick to the meat.

In this device¹ I saw the means of my escape.

I gathered the largest diamonds I could find, and put them into a leather bag fastened at my waist. Then I took the largest of the pieces of meat, tied it close around me with the cloth of my turban, and laid myself upon the ground, with my face downwards. I had scarcely placed myself thus when one of the eagles bore me, with the piece of meat to which I was fastened, to his nest on the top of the mountain. The merchants at once began their shouting to frighten the eagles, and when they had driven the birds away, one of them came to the nest where I was. He was much alarmed when he first saw me, but soon began to quarrel, and asked me why I stole² his goods.

"Do not be uneasy," said I; "here are diamonds enough for you and me, more than all the others have together. They have to take what chance brings them, but I chose for myself, in the valley, those which you see in this bag."

The other merchants now crowded around in amazement, and led me to their camp.³ When I showed them the diamonds in my bag, they confessed that they had never seen any of such size and beauty. I prayed the merchant who owned the nest to which I was carried (for every merchant had his own) to take for his share as many as he pleased. He contented himself with one, and⁴ that the least of them, and, when I urged⁵ him to take more, said:

¹ Device, 方法. ² Stole, 竊; 盜取. ³ Camp, 野宿所用之帳幕; 野宿之所. ⁴ And that the least of them, 且爲其最小者. ⁵ Urged, 固執; 力勸.

“No, this will save¹ me the trouble of making any more voyages, and will raise as great a fortune as I desire.”

When each of the merchants was satisfied with the diamonds which the eagles brought them, we left the place, and traveled near high mountains, where there were serpents of prodigious² length, and from these we had the good fortune to escape. We took³ ship at the first port we reached, and touched at the Isle⁴ of Rôha, where the trees grow that yield⁵ camphire. Here also is found the rhinoceros.⁶ This animal fights with the elephant, runs⁷ his horn into his belly, and carries him off upon his head; but when the blood and fat⁸ of the elephant runs⁹ into his eyes, and makes him blind, he falls to the ground; then, strange to relate, the roc comes and carries them both away in her claws,¹⁰ for food for her young ones.

In this island I exchanged my diamonds for merchandise.¹¹ After trading at various towns, we landed at Bussorah, whence I proceeded to Bagdad. There I gave large presents to the poor, and lived in honor upon the vast riches I had gained with so much fatigue.

The Third Voyage of Sindbad the Sailor

I grew weary soon again of living an idle life, and, hardening¹² myself against the thought of any danger, embarked with some merchants on another long voyage.

¹ Save, 免. ² Prodigious, 巨大 (猶云“極”也). ³ Took ship, 乘船.
⁴ Isle of Rôha, 盧哈島. isle, 島. Rôha (rô/há), 島名. ⁵ Yield, 產;
 生. ⁶ Rhinoceros (ri-nôs/ër-ôs), 犀牛. ⁷ Runs his horn into his
 belly, 將其角刺入象腹. runs . . . into, 刺入. horn, 角. belly, 腹.
⁸ Fat, 脂膏. ⁹ Runs into, 流入. ¹⁰ Claws, 爪. ¹¹ Merchandise, 商
 品; 貨物. ¹² Hardening myself against the thought of any danger,
 力自奮奮, 不復以危險爲念. hardening, 使一變而爲堅強.

After trading at several ports, we were overtaken¹ one day by a dreadful tempest,² which drove³ us from our course. Before it ceased we were brought to the port of an island, which the captain was very unwilling to enter; but we were obliged to cast⁴ anchor. The captain then told us that in this and some islands near it dwelt hairy⁵ savages⁶ who would soon attack⁷ us; and, though they were but dwarfs,⁸ we must not resist⁹ them, for they were more in number than the locusts,¹⁰ and, if we happened to kill one, they would all fall¹¹ upon us and destroy us.

We soon found the captain's words but too true. A great multitude¹² of frightful savages, about two feet high, covered all over with red hair, came swimming towards us, and surrounded the ship. They chattered¹³ as they came near, but we understood not their language.¹⁴ They climbed up the sides of the ship with surprising quickness. They took down our sails, cut the cable,¹⁵ and, hauling¹⁶ the vessel to the shore, made us all get out, and carried the ship into another island, from which they had come. We saw at a distance a¹⁷ vast pile of building, and made¹⁸ towards it. We found it to be a palace, elegantly¹⁹ built, and very lofty, with a gate of ebony²⁰ of two leaves,²¹ which we opened. Before us was a large room, with a porch, having on one side a heap of human bones, and on the

¹ Overtaken, 迫及 (謂爲風力所及也). ² Tempest, 暴風; 颶風.
³ Drove, 驅; 飄流. ⁴ Cast anchor, 投錨; 下碇. ⁵ Hairy, 多毛; 遍體生毛. ⁶ Savages, 野蠻人. ⁷ Attack, 攻擊. ⁸ Dwarfs, 矮小之人; 侏儒.
⁹ Resist, 抵抗. ¹⁰ Locusts, 蝗蟲. ¹¹ Fall upon, 攻擊. ¹² Multitude, 羣.
¹³ Chattered, 爲鈞轉格磔之聲; 急語. ¹⁴ Language, 言語.
¹⁵ Cable, 錨索; 纜繩. ¹⁶ Hauling, 拽; 拖. ¹⁷ A vast pile of building, 大廈一所. pile, 大廈. ¹⁸ Made = went. ¹⁹ Elegantly, 精美.
²⁰ Ebony, 烏木. ²¹ Leaves, 門扇.

other a vast number of roasting¹ spits. We trembled at this sight, and were seized with deadly fear, when suddenly the gate of the room opened with a loud crash,² and there came out the horrible figure of a black man, as tall as a lofty palm³ tree. He had but one eye, and that in the middle of his forehead, where it blazed⁴ bright as a burning⁵ coal. His fore-teeth⁶ were very long and sharp, and stood⁷ out of his mouth, which was as deep as that of a horse. His upper lip hung down upon his breast. His ears were like an elephant's and covered his shoulders; and his nails were as long and crooked⁸ as the talons⁹ of the greatest birds. At the sight of so frightful a genie, we lost our senses, and lay like dead men.

At last we came to ourselves, and saw him sitting in the porch, looking closely at us. Then he advanced, and, laying his hand upon me, took me up by the nape¹⁰ of my neck, and turned me round, as a butcher¹¹ would turn a sheep's head. When he saw that I had nothing but skin and bone, he let me go. He took up all the rest one by one, and viewed them in the same manner. As the captain was the fattest, he held him with one hand, as¹² I would a sparrow,¹³ and thrust a spit¹⁴ through him; he then kindled a great fire, roasted,¹⁵ and ate him for his supper. Then he fell asleep, snoring¹⁶ louder than thunder. He slept thus till morning. As to ourselves, it was not possible for us to enjoy any rest, and we passed the night in the most painful fear. When day appeared the giant awoke, went out, and left us in the palace.

¹ Roasting pits, 燻肉之爐. ² Crash, 震裂之聲. ³ Palm tree, 棕樹. ⁴ Blazed bright, 發光如火. ⁵ Burning coal, 燒紅之煤. ⁶ Fore-teeth, 門牙. ⁷ Stood out, 伸出. ⁸ Crooked, 彎; 曲. ⁹ Talons, 爪. ¹⁰ Nape, 頸之後部; 頸背. ¹¹ Butcher, 屠夫. ¹² As I would = as I would hold. ¹³ Sparrow, 雀. ¹⁴ Spit, 鐵叉. ¹⁵ Roasted, 烤. ¹⁶ Snoring, 打鼾; 發鼾聲.

The next night we revenged ourselves on the brutish¹ giant in the following manner. After he had finished his inhuman² supper on another of our seamen,³ he lay down on his back and fell asleep. As soon as we heard him snore, nine of the boldest among us, and I, took each of us a spit, and, putting the points of them into the fire till they were burning hot, we thrust them into his eye all at once, and blinded him. The pain made him break out in a frightful yell;⁴ he started up, and stretched out his hands to seize and kill us; but we ran to such places as he could not reach. After having sought for us in vain, he groped⁵ for the gate, and went out, howling in agony.

We left the palace at once, and came to the shore, where we made some rafts,⁶ each large enough to carry three men. We waited⁷ till day before getting on them, for we hoped that by morning the howling, which we still heard, would cease, and that the giant would be dead; and if that happened we meant to stay in the island, and not to risk our lives upon the rafts. But day had scarcely appeared when we saw our cruel enemy, with two other giants, almost of the same size, leading him; and a great number were coming before him at a quick pace.

We waited no longer to take to our rafts, and put to sea with all the speed we could. The giants, seeing this, took up great stones, and, running to the shore, entered the water up⁸ to the middle, and threw so exactly that they sank all the rafts but that I was upon; and all my comrades, except the two with me, were drowned. We rowed with all our might, and got⁹ out of the reach of the giants. The next

¹ Brutish, 殘忍. ² Inhuman, 不仁; 殘忍. ³ Seamen, 航海者.
⁴ Yell, 號聲; 大叫. ⁵ Groped for, 摸索. ⁶ Rafts, 木排; 筏. ⁷ Waited till day, 待至天明. ⁸ Up to the middle, 直至腰際. ⁹ Got out of the reach of, 避於 . . . 所不及之處.

morning, after a night of fear, we were thrown upon an island, where we landed with much joy, and found good fruit, which refreshed us greatly.

At night we went to sleep on the seashore, but were awakened by the noise of a serpent of surprising length and thickness,¹ whose scales² made a rustling noise as he moved himself along. It swallowed up one of my comrades, in spite of his loud cries and his efforts to save himself. Dashing³ him several times against the ground, it crushed⁴ him, and we could hear it gnaw⁵ and tear the poor fellow's bones, though we had fled far off. The next day, to our great terror, we saw the serpent again. "O⁶ Heaven, to what dangers are we exposed!" I cried. "We escape from a giant and the waves, only to meet with this!"

The next night, having satisfied our hunger with fruit, we mounted a tall tree, hoping to pass the night in safety. But soon the serpent came hissing to its foot, raised itself up against the trunk, and, reaching my comrade, who sat lower than I, swallowed him at once and went off.

In the morning when I came down, I was ready to throw myself into the sea in my despair. But I resisted⁷ this impulse, and collected a great quantity of small wood, brambles,⁸ and dry thorns,⁹ and, making them up into fagots,¹⁰ made a wide¹¹ circle with them round the tree, and also tied some of them to the branches over my head. Within this circle I shut myself up when night came, with¹²

¹ Thickness, 粗. ² Scales, 鱗. ³ Dashing, 擲; 撞擊. ⁴ Crushed, 以猛力碎之. ⁵ Gnaw, 嚼. ⁶ O, 嗚呼. ⁷ Resisted this impulse, 屏絕此意. ⁸ resisted, 抵抗. ⁹ impulse, 動意. ¹⁰ Brambles, 棘類植物. ¹¹ Thorns, 荆棘. ¹² Fagots 或作 faggots (fäg/üts), 束; 把; 捆. ¹¹ Wide circle, 大圈; 大環. ¹² With such satisfaction as I could get from having neglected nothing that could save me, 凡可自衛之事, 布置略無遺漏, 因之頗為滿意. neglected, 忽略; 遺忘.

such satisfaction as I could get from having neglected nothing that could save me. The serpent failed not to come at the usual hour, but was prevented from reaching me by the rampart¹ I had made. He lay below me till day, like a cat watching in vain for a mouse that has reached a place of safety. When day appeared he retired, but I dared not to leave my fort² until the sun arose.

God took³ pity on my hopeless state, for, just as I was about to cast myself into the sea, I saw a ship in the distance. I cried aloud and waved⁴ the linen of my turban. Then I was seen, and the captain sent his boat⁵ for me. When I came on board, the merchants and seamen flocked⁶ about me to hear how I came into that deserted island, in a region⁷ where cannibal⁸ giants and serpents were known by the oldest sailors to⁹ abound. When I stood before the captain in rags, he gave me one of his own suits.¹⁰ Looking¹¹ steadfastly upon him, I knew him to be the person who, in my second voyage, had left me in the island where I fell asleep, and sailed without me or sending to seek for me.

“Captain,” said I, “look at me, and you may know that I am Sindbad, whom you left in that desert island.”

“God be praised!” he cried, after he had scanned me closely. “I rejoice that fortune has set¹² right my fault. There are your goods, which I always took care to preserve.” I took them from him, and thanked him for his care of them.

¹ Rampart, 壁壘 (此謂障礙物). ² Fort, 堡 (此謂藏身之所). ³ Took pity on, 哀憐; 憐憫. ⁴ Waved, 舞; 揚. ⁵ Boat, 小船 (懸於大船上者). ⁶ Flocked about, 圍住; 環集. ⁷ Region, 地方. ⁸ Cannibal, 食人; 食人肉. ⁹ To abound, 多; 衆多. ¹⁰ Suits, 衣服 (一襲). ¹¹ Looking steadfastly, 凝視; 注視. ¹² Set right, 改正.

We remained at sea for some time, touched at several islands, and landed at last at the island of Salabat,¹ where sandalwood² is obtained. In another island I furnished myself with cloves, cinnamon,³ and other spices. After a long voyage, in⁴ the course of which I saw such creatures as a tortoise⁵ twenty cubits in length and breadth, I arrived at Busscrah, and thence⁶ returned to Bagdad, with so much wealth that I knew not its extent.⁷ I gave a great deal to the poor, and bought another large estate besides what I had already.

The Fourth Voyage of Sindbad the Sailor

After I had rested from the dangers of my third voyage, my passion⁸ for trade and novelty soon drove me from home again. When I had settled⁹ my affairs and taken a stock¹⁰ of goods for traffic,¹¹ I took¹² the route of Persia, traveled over several provinces,¹³ and arrived at a port, where I embarked. It was not long before our ship wrecked.¹⁴ Several of the merchants and seamen were drowned, and the cargo¹⁵ was lost.

I had the good fortune, with a few others, to get upon some planks,¹⁶ and we were carried by the current¹⁷ to an island which lay before us. There we found fruit and

¹ Salabat (sāl/ā-bāt), 地名。 ² Sandalwood, 檀香。 ³ Cinnamon (sīn/ā-mūn), 肉桂。 ⁴ In the course of, 在途中。 ⁵ Tortoise, 龜。
⁶ Thence (作 from that place 解), 自彼處。 ⁷ Extent, 廣; 確數。
⁸ Passion for trade and novelty, 經商探險之念; 好利嗜奇之心。 passion, 熱心。 novelty, 新奇之事。 ⁹ Settled, 結束; 辦結。 ¹⁰ Stock, 一宗 (指貨物)。 ¹¹ Traffic, 交易; 貿易。 ¹² Took the route of Persia, 取道波斯。 route, 路; 道。 ¹³ Provinces, 省。 ¹⁴ Wrecked, 船隻因觸礁遇風等事而破壞。 ¹⁵ Cargo, 全船之貨。 ¹⁶ Planks, 木板; 板片。
¹⁷ Current, 洋流。

spring water, which saved our lives. Early the next morning, we explored¹ the island, and saw some houses, which we approached. As soon as we drew near, we were surrounded by a great number of negroes,² who seized us, shared³ us among them, and carried us to their respective⁴ abodes.

I and five of my comrades were carried to one place; here they made us sit down, and gave us a certain herb, which they made signs to us to eat. My comrades did not notice that the blacks⁵ took⁶ none of it themselves, and ate greedily.⁷ But I, suspecting some trick, would not so much as taste it, which⁸ happened well for me, for in a little time I saw that my comrades had lost their senses, and that when they spoke to me they knew not what they said.

The negroes fed us afterwards with rice⁹ to make us fat, for they were cannibals¹⁰ and meant to eat us. My comrades, who had lost their senses, ate heartily of it, but I very sparingly.¹¹ They were devoured¹² one by one, and I, with my senses entire, as you may readily guess, grew¹³ leaner every day. The¹⁴ fear of death turned all my food into poison. I fell¹⁵ into a sickness which proved my safety, for the negroes, having killed and eaten my comrades, and seeing me to be withered,¹⁶ lean, and sick, put off my death.

¹ Explored, 探險. ² Negroes, 黑人; 尼格羅人. ³ Shared us among them, 將予等一千人分而有之. ⁴ Respective abodes, 各人所住之處. ⁵ Blacks, 黑人. ⁶ Took = ate. ⁷ Greedily, 貪欲. ⁸ Which happened well for me, 此舉却大有益於予. ⁹ Rice, 米; 飯. ¹⁰ Cannibals, 食人者; 食人之人. ¹¹ Sparingly, 少. ¹² Devoured, 吞; 吃. ¹³ Grew leaner every day, 日形瘦弱. ¹⁴ The fear of death turned all my food into poison, 因畏死故, 嘗食有如飲鴆 (謂心中極懼, 食不下嚥也). ¹⁵ Fell into a sickness, 得病; 染病. ¹⁶ Withered, 憔悴 (如草木之凋萎).

Meanwhile I had much liberty, and scarcely any notice was taken of what I did. Therefore one day, when no one but an old man was left about the houses, I made my escape. For seven days I traveled, avoiding places which seemed to be inhabited, and living¹ on coconuts, which served me both for meat and drink. On the eighth day, I came near the sea, and saw some white people, like myself, gathering pepper, of which there was a great plenty in that place. To them I went without fear.

They came to meet me when they saw me, and asked me, in Arabic,² who I was and whence I came. I was overjoyed to hear them speak in my own language, and told them of my shipwreck,³ and how I fell⁴ into the hands of the negroes.

"Those negroes," replied they, "eat man. By what miracle did you escape?"

Then I told them what I have just told you, and they were greatly surprised. When they had finished gathering pepper, they took me with them to the island whence they had come, and presented me to their king, who was a good prince. He listened with surprise to the story of my adventures, and gave me clothes, and commanded that care be taken of me.

The island was well⁵ peopled, and the capital a place of great trade. The prince treated me with much kindness, and I, delighted with such a retreat⁶ after my misfortunes, was soon looked⁷ upon rather as a native⁸ than as a stranger. I observed one thing which seemed to me very strange. All

¹ Living on coconuts, 食椰實爲糧; 以椰實爲糧. ² Arabic, 亞刺伯語. ³ Shipwreck, 船之失事. ⁴ Fell into the hands of, 爲...所虜. ⁵ Well peopled, 戶口繁盛; 人煙稠密. ⁶ Retreat, 避難之地. ⁷ Looked upon, 看待; 視爲. ⁸ Native, 本地人; 土著.

the people, even the king; rode horses without bridle or stirrups.¹ One day I found workmen who made, under my directions, a saddle with stirrups and a bit. These I presented to the king, who was so pleased with them that he made me large presents. I made several others for the ministers and chief officers of his household,² which gained me great repute³ and regard.⁴

One day the king, to whom I constantly⁵ paid court, said:

“Sindbad, I love thee; I have one thing to demand of thee, which thou must grant. I have a mind thou⁶ shouldst marry, so that thou⁷ mayst stay with us, and think no more of thy⁸ own country.”

I durst⁹ not resist the prince's will, and soon I was married to one of the ladies of his court, noble, beautiful; and rich. We lived together in perfect harmony,¹⁰ but I could not forget Bagdad, and planned to make my escape as soon as might be.

At this time the wife of one of my neighbors, with whom I had made a very strict¹¹ friendship, fell sick and died. I went to comfort him in his sorrow, and said as soon as I saw him: “God preserve you and grant you a long life.”

“Alas!” replied he, “how may that be? I have not above¹² an hour to live, for I must be buried this day with my wife. This is a law in this island. The living husband is buried with the dead wife, and the living wife with the dead husband.”

¹ Stirrups, 馬踏盤. ² Household (作 court 解). ³ Repute, 聲譽. ⁴ Regard, 敬禮. ⁵ Constantly, 時常. ⁶ Thou shouldst = you should. ⁷ Thou mayst = you may. ⁸ Thy = your. ⁹ Durst (作 dare 解), 敢. ¹⁰ Harmony, 和睦. ¹¹ Strict friendship, 深交. ¹² Above (作 more than 解), 過.

While he was telling me of this barbarous¹ custom, the very account of which chilled² my blood, his kindred,³ friends, and neighbors came to assist at the funeral. They dressed the corpse⁴ of the woman in her richest robes and all her jewels, as if it had been her wedding⁵ day; then they placed her on an open⁶ bier,⁷ and began their march to the place of burial. The husband walked first, next⁸ to the dead body. When they reached a high mountain, they took up a large stone, which formed the mouth of a deep⁹ pit, and let down the body with all its apparel and jewels. Then the husband, embracing his kindred and friends, let himself be placed on another bier, with a pot of water, and seven small loaves,¹⁰ and was led down in the same manner. The mouth of the pit was again covered with the stone, and the company returned.

I describe all this the more carefully, because I in a few weeks' time was to be the chief¹¹ actor on a similar¹² occasion. Alas! my own wife fell sick and died. I made every plea¹³ I could to the king not to expose¹⁴ me, a foreigner,¹⁵ to this inhuman law. I appealed¹⁶ in vain. The king and all his court, with the chief persons of the city, sought¹⁷ to soften¹⁸ my sorrow by¹⁹ honoring the funeral with their presence; and when the ceremony²⁰ was finished, I was lowered²¹ into the pit with a vessel full of water and

¹ Barbarous, 野蠻. ² Chilled my blood, 使我心膽爲寒; 使我不寒而慄. ³ Kindred, 親族. ⁴ Corpse, 屍. ⁵ Wedding day, 婚期. ⁶ Open, 無物遮蓋; 露. ⁷ Bier (bēr), 昇屍之架 (昇屍往葬地時用之). ⁸ Next to, 在 . . . 之旁. ⁹ Deep pit, 深穴; 深坑. ¹⁰ Loaves, 麵包. ¹¹ Chief actor, 主要之脚色; 重要人物. ¹² Similar occasion, 相類之事; 同一之事件. ¹³ Plea, 懇求. ¹⁴ Expose . . . to, 使 . . . 受 . . . 之苦. ¹⁵ Foreigner, 外國人. ¹⁶ Appealed, 求告. ¹⁷ Sought, 設法. ¹⁸ Soften, 稍慰. ¹⁹ By honoring the funeral with their presence, 親臨送葬以榮之. ²⁰ Ceremony, 禮節. ²¹ Lowered into, 拋入.

seven loaves. As I neared¹ the bottom, I saw, by the aid² of a little light that came from above, what sort of place it was. It seemed an endless³ cavern, and might be about fifty fathoms⁴ deep.

I lived for some time upon my bread and water, when one day, just as I was nearly exhausted,⁵ I heard something tread,⁶ and breathing⁷ or panting⁸ as it moved. I followed the sound. The animal seemed to stop sometimes, but always fled and breathed hard as I approached. I pursued⁹ it till at last I saw a light, like a star.¹⁰ I went on, sometimes lost¹¹ sight of it, but always found it again, and at last discovered¹² that it came through a hole in the rock, which I got through, and found myself, to my great joy, upon the seashore. I fell¹³ upon the shore to thank God for his mercy, and shortly afterwards saw a ship making¹⁴ for the place where I was. I made a sign with the linen of my turban, and called to the crew¹⁵ as loud as I could. They heard me, and sent a boat to bring me on board. It was fortunate for me that they did not inspect¹⁶ the place where they found me, but bore me away at once.

We passed by several islands,—the Isle of Bells,¹⁷ Serendib,¹⁸ and Kela,¹⁹ where lead²⁰ mines are found, also Indian²¹ canes and excellent camphire. The people of these places are so barbarous that they still eat human²² flesh. We touched at several other ports, and finished our traffic,

¹ Neared, 將近; 將及. ² Aid, 助. ³ Endless cavern, 無底洞.
⁴ Fathoms, 英度名 (合英尺六尺). ⁵ Exhausted, 困極; 筋疲力盡.
⁶ Tread, 行走. ⁷ Breathing, 呼吸. ⁸ Panting, 喘. ⁹ Pursued, 追.
¹⁰ Star, 星. ¹¹ Lost sight of, 不見. ¹² Discovered, 發見; 知.
¹³ Fell upon, 跪. ¹⁴ Making for, 向 . . . 而來. ¹⁵ Crew, 水手; 船員.
¹⁶ Inspect, 考查; 考察. ¹⁷ Bells (bēlz), 島名. ¹⁸ Serendib (sē.rēn/dīb), 地名.
¹⁹ Kela (kē/lā), 地名. ²⁰ Lead mines, 鉛礦. ²¹ Indian canes, 甘蔗.
²² Human flesh, 人肉.

and at last I arrived happily at Bagdad. Out of gratitude to God for his mercies, I gave large sums towards¹ the support of several mosques and to the poor, and enjoyed myself with my friends.

The Fifth Voyage of Sindbad the Sailor

All that I had undergone² could not cure³ me of my desire to make new voyages. Therefore I bought goods, departed with them for the best seaport,⁴ and that I might have a ship at⁵ my own command, waited till one was built for me. As I had not goods enough of my own to load her, I took with me several merchants, of different nations,⁶ with their wares.⁷

We sailed with the first fair⁸ wind, and the first place we touched at, after some time, was a desert island, where we found an egg of a roc, equal in size to the one I have mentioned already. There was a young roc in it, just ready to be hatched,⁹ and its beak¹⁰ had begun to break the egg.

The merchants who landed with me broke the egg with hatchets,¹¹ and made a hole in it, pulled out the young roc piecemeal,¹² and roasted it. I had begged them in vain not to meddle¹³ with the egg.

Scarcely had they finished their repast, when there appeared in the air far off two great clouds. The captain of my ship, knowing by experience¹⁴ what they meant, said

¹ Towards the support of, 用以維持。 ² Undergone, 受。 ³ Cure, 治愈; 醫好。 ⁴ Seaport, 海口。 ⁵ At my own command, 由我親自指揮。 ⁶ Nations, 國。 ⁷ Wares, 貨物。 ⁸ Fair wind, 順風。 ⁹ Hatched, 孵化。 ¹⁰ Beak, 嘴; 喙。 ¹¹ Hatchets, 斧。 ¹² Piecemeal (作 piece by piece 解), 零碎; 片片; 塊塊。 ¹³ Meddle with, 動; 干涉。 ¹⁴ Experience, 閱歷。

they were the male and female parents of the roc, and urged us to reëmbark with all speed.

The two rocs approached with a frightful noise, which they redoubled¹ when they saw the egg broken and their young one gone. They flew back in the direction they had come, and were gone for some time, while we made² all the sail we could, to try to prevent that which unhappily befell us.

They soon returned, and we saw that each of them carried in its talons a huge rock. When they came directly over my ship, they hovered,³ and one of them let go his rock; but by the quickness of the steersman⁴ it missed⁵ us, and fell into the sea. The other so exactly hit⁶ the middle of the ship as to split⁷ it into pieces. The seamen and merchants were all crushed⁸ to death, or fell into the sea. I myself was of the number of the latter; but, as I came up again, I fortunately caught hold of a⁹ piece of the wreck, and swimming, sometimes with one hand and sometimes with the other, but always holding fast to the plank, the¹⁰ wind and the tide favoring me, I came to an island and got safely ashore.

I sat down upon the grass to rest, and then went into the island to explore it. It seemed to be a delicious¹¹ garden. Everywhere I found fruit and streams of fresh, pure water. Of these I ate and drank.

When I had gone a little way into the island, I saw an old man who appeared very weak and infirm.¹² He was sitting

¹ Redoubled, 增加一倍; 加甚. ² Made . . . sail, 張帆. ³ Hovered, 懸迴; 盤旋於空中. ⁴ Steersman, 掌舵者; 舵工. ⁵ Missed, 未擊中. ⁶ Hit, 擊中. ⁷ Split, 破; 裂. ⁸ Crushed to death, 壓斃. ⁹ A piece of the wreck, 一片船板. ¹⁰ The wind and the tide favoring me, 幸而風水皆順. ¹¹ Delicious, 可喜; 甚佳. ¹² Infirm, 衰弱; 孱弱.

on the bank of a stream, and at first I took him to be one who had been shipwrecked like myself. I went towards him and saluted him, but he only slightly bowed his head. I asked him why he sat so still; but, instead of answering me, he made a sign for me to take him upon my back, and carry him over the brook.

I believed him really to stand¹ in need of my help, took him upon my back, and, having carried him over, bade him get down. To that end, I stooped, that he might get off with ease; but instead of doing so—and I laugh every time I think of it—the old man, who to me appeared quite feeble, threw his legs nimbly about my neck. He sat² astride upon my shoulders, and held my throat³ so tight⁴ that I thought he would have strangled⁵ me, and I fainted away.

In spite of my fainting, the ill-natured⁶ old fellow still kept his seat upon my neck. When I got my breath again, he thrust⁷ one of his feet against my side, and struck me so rudely with the other, that he forced me to rise up against⁸ my will. Then he made me carry him under the trees, and obliged⁹ me now¹⁰ and then to stop, that he might gather and eat fruit. He never left his seat¹¹ all day; and when I lay down to rest at night, he laid himself down with me, holding still fast about my neck. Every morning he pinched¹² me to make me awake, and afterwards forced me to get up and walk, and spurred¹³ me with his feet.

¹ Stand in need of, 需. ² Sat astride upon my shoulders, 跨坐余之肩。 astride, 跨. ³ Throat, 喉. ⁴ Tight, 緊. ⁵ Strangled, 窒死; 縊.
⁶ Ill-natured, 惡. ⁷ Thrust one of his feet against my side, 以其一足迫吾之旁. ⁸ Against my will, 違我心意. ⁹ Obligated, 迫. ¹⁰ Now and then, 時時. ¹¹ Seat, 座; 所坐之處. ¹² Pinched, 捻; 以指捏之.
¹³ Spurred, 驅; 以履釘促之前進.

One day I found several dry gourds¹ that had fallen from a tree. I took a large one, and, after cleaning it, passed² into it some juice of grapes, which abounded in the island. Having filled the gourd, I put³ it by, and, going⁴ for it some days after, tasted and found the wine so good that it gave me new vigor,⁵ and so raised⁶ my spirits that I began to sing and dance as I carried my⁷ burden.

The old man, noticing the effect⁸ of the wine upon me, made me a sign to give him some of it. I handed⁹ him the gourd, and, the liquor¹⁰ pleasing his palate,¹¹ he drank¹² it off. As there was some quantity of it, he soon began to sing, and to move¹³ from side to side in his seat upon my shoulders, and by¹⁴ degrees to loosen his legs from about me. Finding that he did not press me as before, I threw him upon the ground, where he lay without motion; then I took up a great stone and slew him.

I was extremely¹⁵ glad to be thus freed forever from this troublesome fellow. I now walked towards the beach,¹⁶ where I met the crew¹⁷ of a ship that had cast¹⁸ anchor, to take in water. When I told them of my adventure, they said: "You fell into the hands of the Old¹⁹ Man of the Sea, and are the first who ever escaped strangling. He never quitted those he had once embraced till he had destroyed them, and many are the men he has slain."

¹ Gourds, 葫蘆. ² Passed, 擠. ³ Put . . . by, 擱置一邊; 放開; 儲.
⁴ Going for it, 往取之. ⁵ Vigor, 力量; 精力. ⁶ Raised my spirits, 振作我之精神; 使我高興. ⁷ My burden, 吾所負荷之物 (指老人).
⁸ Effect of the wine, 酒之影響. ⁹ Handed, 授. ¹⁰ Liquor, 酒.
¹¹ Palate, 齶. ¹² Drank . . . off, 飲盡. ¹³ Move from side to side, 左右擺擺; 擺搖欲墮. ¹⁴ By degrees, 漸漸. ¹⁵ Extremely, 十分; 極.
¹⁶ Beach, 海邊; 海灘. ¹⁷ Crew, 水手; 船夫. ¹⁸ Cast anchor, 停泊; 下錨. ¹⁹ Old Man of the Sea, 海上老人 (此語今人以稱“重果,”其故與即出於此也).

Their captain received me with great kindness, and after some day's sail we arrived at the harbor of a great city, the houses of which overhung¹ the sea.

With some of the people of this town I went to gather coconuts after² their own method. When we reached a thick forest of coconut trees, we saw a great number of apes of several sizes, which fled as soon as they saw us, and climbed to the tops of the trees with³ amazing swiftness.

The merchants, with whom I was, gathered stones, and threw them at the apes on the trees. I did the same; and the apes, out⁴ of revenge, threw coconuts at us so fast and with such gestures⁵ as to show their anger clearly. We gathered up the coconuts, and from time to time threw stones to provoke⁶ the apes. In this way we filled our bags with coconuts, and by degrees I got enough to produce⁷ me no small sum of money.

We set⁸ sail, and traded in various islands, at one of which I hired divers⁹ and with other merchants went a-pearl-fishing.¹⁰ Some of the pearls they brought me up were very large and pure.¹¹ Then I returned to Bagdad, and gave a tenth of my gains in alms,¹² and rested from my fatigues.

The Sixth Voyage of Sindbad the Sailor

I know, my friends, that you will wish to hear how, after having been shipwrecked and having escaped so many

¹ Overhung, 俯臨; 懸出 . . . 之上. ² After . . . method, 依 . . . 之方法. ³ With amazing swiftness, 異常迅速; 迅捷驚人. ⁴ Out of revenge, 因欲報怨. ⁵ Gestures, 姿勢. ⁶ Provoke, 激怒. ⁷ Produce, 生. ⁸ Set sail, 啓程. ⁹ Divers, 善於潛水之人. ¹⁰ A-pearl-fishing, 採珠. ¹¹ Pure, 潔淨. ¹² Alms, 賑濟貧乏之財物; 施捨.

dangers, I could resolve again to tempt¹ fortune, and expose² myself to new hardships. When I reflect³ upon it now it seems that I must have been led by destiny,⁴ from which none can escape. Be⁵ this as it may, after a year's rest, I prepared for a sixth voyage, though my kindred and friends did all in their power to dissuade me.

Once more I traveled through several provinces of Persia and the Indies, and arrived at a seaport, where I embarked on a ship bound⁶ on a long voyage, in which the captain⁷ and the pilot⁸ lost⁹ their course. Suddenly we saw the captain quit his rudder,¹⁰ lamenting¹¹ loudly, pulling his beard and beating his head like a madman. In reply to our questions, he answered:

“A rapid¹² current carries the ship along with it, and we shall all perish in less than a¹³ quarter of an hour. Pray God to deliver¹⁴ us from this peril.¹⁵ We cannot escape, if He¹⁶ do not take pity on us.”

At these words he ordered the sails to be lowered,¹⁷ but the ropes broke, and the current carried the ship to the foot of a mountain, where she struck and went¹⁸ to pieces, but in such a way that we saved our lives, our provisions,¹⁹ and the best of our goods.

¹ Tempt fortune, 嘗試運命. ² Expose myself to new hardships, 再歷困苦. ³ Reflect upon, 回想. ⁴ Destiny, 天命. ⁵ Be this as it may, 安知其竟非如此 (this, 指上文 it seems . . . escape 一句). ⁶ Bound on a long voyage, 將赴遠道. ⁷ Captain, 船主. ⁸ Pilot, 引船者 (識航路, 爲海船司向導之人). ⁹ Lost their course, 失途; 迷於所向. ¹⁰ Rudder, 舵. ¹¹ Lamenting, 因愁苦而發悲哀之聲. ¹² Rapid current, 急流. ¹³ A quarter of an hour, 一刻鐘; 十五分鐘. ¹⁴ Deliver, 救. ¹⁵ Peril, 險. ¹⁶ He (指 God). ¹⁷ Lowered, 下. ¹⁸ Went to pieces, 破碎. ¹⁹ Provisions, 糧食.

The foot of the mountain was covered with wrecks,¹ with a vast number of human bones, and goods and riches of all kinds beyond² belief. In all other places it is usual for rivers to run into the sea; but here a river of fresh water runs from the sea into a dark cavern, with a very high and spacious³ entrance. What is most strange in this place is that the stones of the mountain are of crystal,⁴ rubies, and other precious stones. Here also are ambergris⁵ and wood of aloes.

It is not possible for ships to get off from this place when once they approach⁶ within a certain distance. If the wind is from the sea, this⁷ and the current drive them on. If it is a land wind, it is stopped by the height of the mountain, which causes a calm,⁸ so that the force of the current carries them ashore. What is worse, it is no more possible to ascend⁹ the mountain than to escape by sea. Here we remained¹⁰ in a state of despair,¹¹ expecting death every day.

When we landed,¹² we divided the food equally, and thus each one lived a longer or shorter time, according to the use he made of his share. I outlived¹³ my comrades, and, when I buried the last of them, had so little food left that I dug a grave for myself. But God once more took pity on me, and put¹⁴ it in my mind to go to the bank of the river which ran into the cavern. I said to myself:

“This underground¹⁵ river must somewhere have an outlet.¹⁶ If I make a raft, and leave¹⁷ myself to the current,

¹ Wrecks, 壞船. ² Beyond belief, 有使人聽信者. ³ Spacious, 寬闊. ⁴ Crystal, 水晶. ⁵ Ambergris (ām/bēr-grēs), 龍涎香. ⁶ Approach, 行近. ⁷ This (指 wind from the sea). ⁸ Calm, 無風. ⁹ Ascend, 上; 登. ¹⁰ Remained, 留滯. ¹¹ Despair, 失望. ¹² Landed, 上陸; 登岸. ¹³ Outlived, 壽命較長. ¹⁴ Put it in my mind, 使我想起. ¹⁵ Underground, 地下. ¹⁶ Outlet, 出路. ¹⁷ Leave myself to the current, 隨流浮去.

it will convey me to some inhabited country, or I shall perish. "If I be drowned, I only change one kind of death for another."

Out of pieces of timber and cables from the wrecks, I soon made myself a solid raft. Then I loaded it carefully with some chests of rubies, emeralds, ambergris, rock¹ crystal, and bales of rich stuffs,² and went on board with two oars that I had made, leaving the raft to the course of the river, and resigning³ myself to the will of God.

As soon as I entered the cavern, I lost all light, and the stream carried me I⁴ knew not whither. Thus I floated on, eating only enough to keep myself alive. But the food was soon spent,⁵ and I lost⁶ my senses. When I revived,⁷ I found myself on the brink⁸ of a river, where my raft was tied, amidst a great number of negroes. When I saluted⁹ them, they spoke to me, but I did not understand their tongue.¹⁰ In my joy I recited aloud the following words in Arabic:

"Call upon the¹¹ Almighty. He will help thee; shut thine eyes, and while thou art asleep, God will change thy bad fortune into good."

One of the negroes, who understood Arabic, came forward and told me that they had seen my raft, and fastened it until I should awake. Through him I told the others, at their request, of all that had befallen me. The story was so strange that they said I must tell it to their king myself. Then they mounted¹² me on a horse, and some led the way, and some followed with my raft and cargo.

¹ Rock crystal, 水晶. ² Stuff, 生貨. ³ Resigning myself to the will of God, 一聽天命. resigning to, 聽任. ⁴ I knew not whither, 不知去向何處(此語作一疏狀字用). ⁵ Spent, 盡. ⁶ Lost my senses, 昏絕. ⁷ Revived, 醒. ⁸ Brink, 邊. ⁹ Saluted, 與... 爲禮; 招呼. ¹⁰ Tongue, 語言. ¹¹ The Almighty, 全智全能之上帝. ¹² Mounted me on a horse, 置我於馬上.

The king received me kindly, and bade me sit by his side while I told him what I have told you. When my bales were opened in his presence, he marveled¹ at what they contained, above all, at the rubies and emeralds, which surpassed any in his treasury.

When I saw with what pleasure he viewed² them, I fell at his feet and said:

“Sire, not only is my person at³ your majesty’s service, but the cargo of the raft, and I beg of you to dispose⁴ of it as your own.”

But he would take none of my goods, and promised that I should leave his realm⁵ richer than I came. His officers were charged to serve me at his expense, and every day I paid the king my court, and saw what⁶ was most worthy of notice in the city. By⁷ way of devotion I made a pilgrimage⁸ to the place where Adam was confined⁹ after his banishment from Paradise.¹⁰

Then I prayed the king to allow me to return to my own country, and his permission was most kindly given. He would force a¹¹ rich present upon me; and at the same time charged¹² me with a letter for the Commander of the Faithful, our sovereign, saying to me: “I pray you give this present for me, and this letter to the Caliph Haroun al Raschid, and assure him of my friendship.”

The letter from the king of Serendib was written on the skin of a certain animal of great value, very scarce, and of a yellowish color. The characters¹³ of the letter were of azure,¹⁴ and the contents as follows:

¹ Marveled at, 驚訝. ² Viewed, 看. ³ At . . . service, 一聽 . . . 之命. ⁴ Dispose of, 處置. ⁵ Realm, 國. ⁶ What was most worthy of notice in the city, 城中最高注意之事. worthy of, 堪. ⁷ By way of devotion, 出於敬禮. ⁸ Pilgrimage, 瞻禮聖地之遊. ⁹ Confined, 幽禁. ¹⁰ Paradise, 天堂. ¹¹ A rich present, 豐厚之贈物. ¹² Charged, 交託. ¹³ Characters, 字. ¹⁴ Azure, 青; 天藍.

“The King of the Indies, before whom march one hundred elephants, who lives in a palace that shines with one hundred thousand rubies, and who has in his treasury twenty thousand crowns enriched with diamonds, to Caliph Haroun al Raschid.

“Though the present we send you be slight,¹ receive it as a brother and a friend, in² token of the hearty³ friendship we bear for you, and of which we are willing to give you proof. We desire the same part in your friendship, since we believe it to be our merit, for we are both kings. We send you this letter as from one brother to another. Farewell.”

The present consisted of one ruby made into a cup, about half a foot high, an inch thick, and filled with round pearls of half a drachm⁴ each; and the skin of a serpent, whose scales were as bright as a piece of gold, and preserved⁵ from sickness those who lay upon it; besides a vast quantity of the best quality of wood of aloes and camphire, and a female slave of great beauty, whose robe was covered over with jewels.

As soon as I reached Bagdad I presented myself before the caliph with the letter and gift. When he had read the letter he asked if the king of Serendib were indeed so rich and potent,⁶ and, bowing⁷ to his feet, I assured him that it was all true, and told him in what state the prince appeared in public, with a throne on the back of an elephant, surrounded by officers and a guard of a thousand men.

“The officer who is before on his elephant,” I said, “cries from time to time with a loud voice: ‘Behold⁸ the great

¹ Slight, 微. ² In token of, 記念. ³ Hearty, 真誠; 誠意. ⁴ Drachm (或作 dram), 量名. ⁵ Preserved from sickness, 可使無病. ⁶ Potent, 勢力強盛. ⁷ Bowing, 鞠躬. ⁸ Behold, 看.

monarch, the mighty Sultan of the Indies, greater than Solomon.' Then the officer behind the throne cries in his turn: "This monarch, so great and powerful, must die, must die, must die.' And the officer before him replies: 'Praise alone be to Him¹ who liveth forever and ever.'"

The caliph was much pleased with my account,² and sent me home with a rich present.

The Seventh and Last Voyage of Sindbad the Sailor

After my sixth voyage I had given³ up all thoughts of going to sea again, for my age required rest, and I wished to expose myself to no more risks, but to pass the rest of my days in peace. One day, however, an officer from the palace came and said the caliph must speak to me.

"Sindbad," said he, when I had bowed to the floor before the throne, "I stand in need of your service; you must carry my answer and present to the king of Serendib."

This command was to me like a clap⁴ of thunder. Though I had made a vow never to leave Bagdad, I saw that I must obey. The caliph was well pleased, and ordered me a sum of money ample⁵ for my needs.

In a few days I departed with the letter and present, and, after a safe voyage, reached the Isle of Serendib.

"Sindbad," said the king, when I was brought before him with great pomp, and had bowed to the earth, "you are welcome; I have many times thought of you. I bless⁶ the day on which I see you once more."

¹ Him (指上帝). ² Account, 所述. ³ Given up all thoughts of, 不再作...之想. ⁴ Clap of thunder, 霹靂. ⁵ Ample for my needs, 準以所需, 尙得豐足. ⁶ Bless, 爲...祝禱.

I thanked him for his kindness, and delivered¹ the gifts from my august² master. The caliph's letter was as follows:

"Greeting, in³ the name of the Sovereign⁴ Guide of the Right Way, from the Servant⁵ of God, Haroun al Raschid, whom God hath set in the place of vice-regent⁶ to his Prophet,⁷ after his ancestors⁸ of happy memory, to the potent and esteemed King of Serendib.

"We received your letter with joy, and send you this from our imperial⁹ residence, the garden¹⁰ of superior wits. We hope when you look upon it you will perceive our good will, and be pleased with it. Farewell."

The caliph's present was a complete¹¹ suit of cloth of gold, fifty robes of rich stuff, a hundred of white cloth, the finest of Cairo, Suez,¹² and Alexandria;¹³ a vessel of agate,¹⁴ half a foot wide, on the bottom of which was carved a man with one knee on the ground, who held a bow and an arrow, ready to discharge¹⁵ at a lion. He sent also a rich¹⁶ tablet,¹⁷ which, according to tradition,¹⁸ belonged to the great Solomon.

¹ Delivered, 呈遞. ² August master, 尊嚴之主 (指 caliph). ³ In the name of, 承 . . . 之意. ⁴ Sovereign Guide of the Right Way, 最尊無上正道之導師 = 上帝. ⁵ Servant of God, 上帝之僕 (凱立夫自稱). ⁶ Vice-regent, 協治者; 統治者之副. regent, 統治者 (指穆罕默德). ⁷ Prophet, 預言者 (指穆罕默德. 亞刺伯人奉穆罕默德之後嗣為王, 故書中云云). ⁸ Ancestors of happy memory, 名譽光榮之祖. ancestors, 祖 (謂前王). of happy memory, 有光榮之名譽; 有成功盛德可稱. ⁹ Imperial residence, 皇帝之所居. ¹⁰ Garden of superior wits, 異才之苑 (謂英才聚集之所, 猶華言之云文苑翰林也). ¹¹ Complete suit, 全套. ¹² Suez (sōō-ēz'), 蘇彝士 (在紅海及地中海之間). ¹³ Alexandria (al-ēg-zān/dri-ā), 地名 (在埃及北部海口). Cairo, Suez, Alexandria 三處, 均以產布名. ¹⁴ Agate, 瑪瑙. ¹⁵ Discharge, 發矢; 射. ¹⁶ Rich, 華美. ¹⁷ Tablet, 版. ¹⁸ Tradition, 傳說; 古昔相傳之語.

The king of Serendib was highly pleased. Soon I obtained leave to depart, though not easily. Dismissed¹ with a large present, I sailed at once for Bagdad, but had not the good fortune to arrive there so soon as I had hoped God² ordered it otherwise.

Three or four days after sailing, we were attacked by pirates.³ Some of the crew were killed, and I, with others who did not resist, was taken to a remote island and sold.

I fell into the hands of a rich merchant, who treated me well, and dressed me handsomely as a slave. In a few days he asked me if I knew any trade. I told him I was a merchant, robbed⁴ of all I possessed. "Tell me," said he, "can you shoot with a bow?" I said it had been one of the exercises of my youth. Then he gave me a bow and arrow, took me behind him on an elephant, and carried me to a thick forest. Stopping before a great tree, he said: "Climb up that, and shoot at the elephants, of which there are many in this forest, as you see them pass by, and if any of them fall, come and give me notice." Then he left me, and returned to the town, and I remained upon the tree all night.

In the morning I shot one of the many elephants that passed under the tree, and when the others had left it dead, I went into the town and told my patron⁵ of my success, which pleased him greatly. Then we returned, and dug a hole for the elephant, in which my patron meant to leave it until it was rotten,⁶ when he would take its teeth and trade with them.

¹ Dismissed, 放歸. ² God ordered it otherwise, 天之所命, 正與此異. ³ Pirates, 海盜. ⁴ Robbed of all I possessed, 奪奪我之所有. ⁵ Patron, 主人. ⁶ Rotten, 爛; 朽.

For two months I did this service. One morning I was amazed to see that the elephants, instead of passing by, stopped and came towards my tree with a horrible noise, in such numbers that the plain was covered, and shook under them. They surrounded the tree, with their trunks¹ up-lifted, and all fixed their eyes upon me. This frightened me so that my bow and arrows fell out of my hand.

My fears were not without cause, for soon one of the largest of the elephants put his trunk round the foot of the tree, plucked² it up, and threw it on the ground. I fell with the tree, and the elephant, taking me up with his trunk, laid me on his back, where I sat more like one dead than alive. He put himself at the head of the rest, who followed him in³ line, carried me some distance, then laid me down on the ground, and retired with all the others. When they were gone, I got up, and found that I was upon a long and broad hill, almost covered with the bones and teeth of elephants. I doubted not but that this was their burial place, and that they carried me thither on purpose to tell me that I should no longer kill them, now that I knew where to get their teeth without doing them harm. I did not stay on the hill, but turned towards the city, and, traveling a day and a night, came to my patron.

He had believed me dead, for he had found the tree pulled up in the forest, and my bow and arrows on the ground. When he had heard of my escape, we set out for the hill, and brought back as many teeth as an elephant could bear. Then my master told me how many slaves had been killed by the elephants, and blessed me for making him and his whole city rich. "I can treat you no more

¹ Trunks, 象鼻. ² Plucked it up, 拔起. ³ In line, 以次

as a slave," he said, "but as a brother. I give you your liberty henceforth. I will also give you riches."

To this I answered that the only reward I wished was leave to return to my own country. "Very well," said he; "the monsoon¹ will soon bring ships for ivory.² Then I will send you home."

While waiting for the monsoon we made many journeys to the hill, and, when my ship sailed, my master loaded half of it with ivory on³ my account. With this I traded at various ports, gaining vast sums of money. Besides the ivory, my master gave me precious gifts. The last portion of my journey I made by land, and when it was done I was happy in thinking I had nothing more to fear from the seas, from pirates, from serpents, or from the other perils to which I had been exposed. Safe at Bagdad, I waited upon the caliph at once, and told him how I had fulfilled his mission.⁴ He loaded⁵ me with honors and rich presents, and I have ever since devoted⁶ myself to my family, kindred, and friends.

Sindbad here finished the story of his seventh and last voyage. "Well, friend," he said, turning to Hindbad, "did you ever hear of any person that suffered so much as I have done? Is it not just that after all this I should enjoy a quiet and pleasant life?"

Hindbad in answer kissed his hand and said: "Sir, my pains are not to be compared with yours. You not only deserve a quiet life, but are worthy of all the riches you

¹ Monsoon (mōn-sōon'), 恆風; 定期風; 季候風 (此風起於印度洋中。五月至九月, 多來自西南, 十月至四月, 則來自東北)。² Ivory, 象牙。
³ On my account, 爲我; 以我之故。⁴ Mission, 使命; 差遣。⁵ Loaded me with = gave me many. ⁶ Devoted myself to my family, kindred, and friends, 專與家人戚族朋友周旋 (謂不再遊也)。

possess, since you make so good a use of them. May you live happily for a long time."

Sindbad ordered another purse of money to be given him, and told him to give up carrying burdens as a porter, and to eat henceforth at his table; for he wished Hindbad to remember all his life that he had a friend in Sindbad the Sailor.

XII

THE BARMECIDE¹ FEAST

I have now, said the talkative² barber³ who had related the strange adventures of his five brothers, only to tell the story of my sixth brother, called Shacabac,⁴ with the hare-lips.⁵ After beginning his life in comfort, a reverse⁶ of fortune brought him to beg⁷ his bread. One day as he passed a great house, with many servants standing within its spacious court; he went to one of them, and asked him to whom the house belonged.

“Good man,” replied the servant; “whence do you come that you ask me such a question? Does not all that you see tell you that it is the palace⁸ of a Barmecide?”

My brother, knowing well how generous⁹ all the¹⁰ Barmecides were, prayed one of the gatekeepers¹¹ at once to give him an alms. “Go in,” said the man; “nobody hinders¹² you, and speak to the master of the house; he will send you back satisfied.”

My brother, who expected no such politeness, thanked the porter,¹³ and entered the palace. He went on till he

¹ Barmecide feast, 巴氏宴. Parmecide (bār/mē-sid), 巴米薩德 (姓氏). (Haroun al Raschid 時, 國有豪族, 曰巴氏, 厚蒙恩遇, 一旦族其強盛, 靈族誅之, 卽此是也, 本篇原名 “The Story of the Barber’s Sixth Brother,” 爲理髮匠所述故事六則之最末一則, 茲以僅錄此則, 故易今名). ² Talkative, 健談; 饒舌. ³ Barber, 理髮匠. ⁴ Shacabac (shā/kā-bāk), 人名. ⁵ Harelips, 缺唇; 缺嘴. ⁶ Reverse of fortune, 厄運. ⁷ Beg his bread, 乞食. ⁸ Palace, 大宅; 邸第. ⁹ Generous, 大量; 寬宏. ¹⁰ The Barmecides, 巴氏之人. ¹¹ Gatekeepers, 守門者; 司關者. ¹² Hinders, 阻止. ¹³ Porter, 門丁; 閽人.

came to a richly furnished hall, at the upper end of which he saw an old man, with a long, white beard, sitting on a sofa. He thought it must be the master of the house, and indeed it was¹ the Barmecide himself, who said to my brother, in a very civil manner, that he was welcome, and asked him what he wanted.

“My Lord,” answered my brother, “I am a poor man who needs help. I swear to you I have not eaten one bit to-day.”

“Is it true,” demanded the Barmecide, “that you are fasting² till now? Alas, the poor man is ready to die for hunger! Ho, boy!” cried he, with a loud voice, “bring a basin and water at once, that we may wash our hands.”

Though no boy appeared,³ and my brother saw neither water nor basin, the Barmecide fell to rubbing⁴ his hands as if one had poured water upon them, and bade my brother come and wash with him. Shacabac caught⁵ the spirit of the Barmecide’s jest,⁶ and knowing that the poor must please the rich, if they would have anything from them, came forward and did as he was bidden.

“Come on,” said the Barmecide, “bring us something to eat, and do not let us wait.” Then, though nothing appeared, he began to eat, as if something had been brought him upon a plate, and putting his hand to his mouth, began to eat; and said to my brother:

“Come, friend, eat as freely as if you were at home; you said you were almost dying of hunger, but you eat as if you had no appetite.”⁷

¹ Was the Barmecide himself, 卽巴公本人. ² Fasting, 斷食. ³ Appeared, 出現 (卽“來”之意). ⁴ Rubbing, 擦. ⁵ Caught the spirit of, 心知其意. ⁶ Jest, 戲謔. ⁷ Appetite, 胃口.

"Pardon me, my Lord," said Shacabac, who perfectly imitated¹ what he did. "You see I lose no time, and that I play² my part well enough."

"How like you this bread?" said the Barmecide. "Do not you find it very good?"

"O my Lord," replied my brother, who saw neither bread nor meat, "I have never eaten anything so white and so fine."

"Eat³ your fill," said the Barmecide. "I assure you that it cost me five hundred pieces of gold to purchase the woman who bakes me this good bread."

Soon the Barmecide called for another dish, and my brother went on eating, only in⁴ idea. There was never better mutton⁵ and barley broth, the Barmecide said; and my brother assented.⁶ Then there was a goose⁷ with sweet sauce,⁸ and a lamb,⁹ fed¹⁰ with nuts. Of this the Barmecide boasted¹¹ especially, and of all my brother, who was ready to die with hunger, pretended to eat.

"You honor me by eating so heartily," said the Barmecide. "Ho, boy, bring us more meat."

"No, my Lord, if it please you," replied my brother, "for indeed I can eat no more."

"Come, then," said the Barmecide, "and bring the fruit." When he had waited long enough for the servants to appear again, he said to my brother: "Taste these almonds.¹² They are good and fresh¹³ gathered. Look, here are all sorts of fruits, cakes, and sweetmeats. Take what you like."

¹ Imitated, 效; 學 . . . 之樣. ² Play my part well enough, 已頗盡力矣 (謂盡量而食, 略不退讓也). ³ Eat your fill, 盡量食之. ⁴ In idea, 在想像中. ⁵ idea, 意想. ⁶ Mutton, 羊肉. ⁷ Assented, 贊同; 首肯; 亦以爲然. ⁸ Goose, 鵝. ⁹ Sauce, 調味之汁. ¹⁰ Lamb, 羊. ¹¹ Fed with nuts, 烹時腹中實以果仁. ¹² Boasted, 自誇 (即"甚爲得意"之意). ¹³ Almonds, 杏仁. ¹⁴ Fresh gathered, 新採自樹上者。

Then, stretching out his hand, as if he had reached¹ my brother something, he still bade him eat, and said, "Methinks² you do not eat as if you had been so hungry as you said you were when you came in."

"My Lord," replied Shacabac, whose jaws³ ached⁴ with moving and having nothing to eat, "I assure you I am so full that I cannot eat one bit more."

"Well then, friend," the Barmecide went on, "we must drink some wine now, after we have eaten so well."

"I see you will have nothing wanting," said Shacabac, "to make your treat⁵ complete; but since I am not used to drinking wine, I am afraid I may not act with the respect that is due to you. Therefore let me be content with water."

"No, no!" said the Barmecide; "you shall drink wine," and at the same time he commanded some to be brought, as the meat and fruit had been served before. He made as if he poured out for both, and said, "Drink my health, and let us know if you think this wine good."

My brother pretended to take the glass, and looked to see if the color was good, and put it to his nose, to try⁶ the flavor. He then made a low bow to the Barmecide, to show that he took the liberty to drink his health; and then drank with all the signs⁷ of a man that drinks with pleasure.

"My Lord," said he, "this is very excellent wine, but I think it is not strong⁸ enough."

"If you would have stronger," answered the Barmecide, "you need only speak, for I have several sorts in my cellar.⁹ Try how you like this."

¹ Reached, 遞與. ² Methinks (作 as I think 解), 以余觀之.
³ Jaws, 牙床骨. ⁴ Ached, 痛; 疼痛. ⁵ Treat, 款待. ⁶ Try the flavor, 辨其香味.
⁷ Signs, 態度. ⁸ Strong, (酒性) 猛烈. ⁹ Cellar, 地窖.

Then he made as if he poured out another glass for himself and one for my brother, and did this so often that Shacabac, feigning that the wine had gone¹ to his head, lifted up his hand, like a drunken² man, and gave the Barmecide such a box on the ear as made him fall down. He was going to give him another blow; but the Barmecide, holding up his hand to ward³ it off, cried: "Are you mad?"

Then my brother, making as if he had come to himself again, said, "My Lord, you have been so good as to admit your slave into your house, and give him a treat. You should have been content with making me eat, and not have forced me to drink wine; for I told you that it might cause me to fail⁴ in my respect to you. I am very sorry for it, and beg you a thousand pardons."

When he had finished these words, the Barmecide, instead of being angry, began to laugh with all his might. "I have been long," said he, "seeking a⁵ man of your sort. I not only forgive you the blow you have given me, but I desire that we may be friends from this time forth, and that you take my house for your home. You have had the good nature to adapt⁶ yourself to my humors, and the patience to keep⁷ the jest up to⁸ the last. We will now eat in⁹ good earnest."

Then he clapped his hands and commanded his servants, who appeared at once, to cover¹⁰ the table, and my brother was really treated with all the dishes of which before he

¹ Gone to his head, 入其腦筋 (意謂醉也). ² Drunken man, 醉漢.
³ Ward it off, 擋住; 格開. ⁴ Fail in my respect to, 侮慢; 不敬. ⁵ A man of your sort, 類汝之人; 似汝者. ⁶ Adapt yourself to my humors, 求合我之性情. ⁷ Keep . . . up, 使不至中輟. ⁸ To the last, 至終. ⁹ In good earnest, 認真. ¹⁰ Cover the table, 鋪桌毯 (即“預備筵席”之意).

had eaten only in¹ fancy. Wine and music followed, and the Barmecide's goodness to my brother did not stop there, for finding him to be a man² of wit and sense; he soon gave him the care of his household, and for twenty years, until the Barmecide's death, Shacabac performed his duties well.

¹ In fancy = in idea. ² Man of wit and sense, 才識敏備之人

XIII

THE HISTORY¹ OF PRINCE ZEYN² ALASNAM AND THE SULTAN OF THE GENII

I

THERE was a sultan of Bussorah, prosperous and beloved. He had only one source of sorrow, that he was childless.³ He therefore gave⁴ large alms to the dervishes in his dominions,⁵ that they might pray for the birth of a son. Their prayers were granted, and a son was born to him and his queen; the child was named Zeyn Alasnam, which means "Ornament⁶ of the Statues."

All the astrologers⁷ of the kingdom were called together to foretell⁸ the infant's⁹ future. They found by their calculations¹⁰ that he would live long, and be very brave; but that all his courage would be little enough to carry him through the misfortunes that threatened¹¹ him. The sultan was not alarmed, but said: "My son is not to be pitied, since he will be brave; it is fit that princes should have¹² a taste of misfortunes, for thus¹³ is their virtue tried, and they are the better prepared to reign."

¹ History, 事跡. ² Zeyn Alasnam (zēn ā-lās/nām), 人名. ³ Childless, 無子女. ⁴ Gave large alms to the dervishes, 布施僧侶. ⁵ Dominions, 領土; 國土. ⁶ Ornament of the Statues, 神像之飾. ⁷ Astrologers, 星士. ⁸ Foretell, 預言; 卜. ⁹ Infant's future, 嬰兒之將來. ¹⁰ Calculations, 推算. ¹¹ Threatened, 將降於. ¹² Have a taste of misfortunes, 親嘗艱苦; 略知艱苦. ¹³ Thus is their virtue tried = thus their virtue is tried, 如是則其德性乃定.

He rewarded the wise men and dismissed them, and caused Zeyn to be educated with the greatest care. But while the prince was still young, the good sultan fell¹ sick of an illness which all the skill² of his physicians³ could not cure. Knowing that he must die, he sent for his son, and advised him to try to⁴ be loved rather than to be feared, to avoid⁵ flatterers,⁶ and to be as⁷ slow in rewarding as in punishing.

After his father's death, Prince Zeyn soon began to show that he was unfit to govern⁸ a kingdom. He gave⁹ way to all kinds of dissipation, conferred¹⁰ upon his young but evil mates the chief¹¹ offices of the land, lost all the respect of his people, and emptied his treasury.

The queen, his mother, discreet¹² and wise, tried to correct¹³ his conduct, and warned him that he would lose his crown¹⁴ and life if he did not mend his ways. The people began to murmur, and a general revolt¹⁵ would soon have followed, if the sultan had not taken the advice of his mother. He dismissed his youthful¹⁶ advisers,¹⁷ and gave¹⁸ the government over to aged men, who knew how to control¹⁹ the people.

¹ Fell sick of an illness, 染病; 得病. ² Skill, 技能. ³ Physicians, 醫士. ⁴ To be loved rather than to be feared, 與其使人畏, 無寧使人愛. ⁵ Avoid, 避. ⁶ Flatterers, 諂諛者; 諛諛面諛之人. ⁷ As slow in rewarding as in punishing, 刑欲慎而賞亦欲慎; 慎於賞善, 如其罰惡; 罰不加於無罪, 賞必施於有功. ⁸ Govern, 統治; 管理. ⁹ Gave way to all kinds of dissipation, 恣縱無度; 縱情聲色狗馬之事. gave way to (作 yielded to 解), 自放; 不自抑制. dissipation, 荒於酒色; 放蕩. ¹⁰ Conferred, 賜; 授. ¹¹ Chief offices of the land, 國之要職. ¹² Discreet, 謹慎. ¹³ Correct his conduct, 矯正其行. ¹⁴ Crown, 冕 (意謂君位). ¹⁵ Revolt, 叛亂; 革命. ¹⁶ Youthful, 少不更事. ¹⁷ Advisers, 爲之策畫之人. ¹⁸ Gave the government over to aged men, 將國事付之老人. gave . . . over, 託付. government, 政事. ¹⁹ Control, 管理; 治理.

Zeyn repented¹ sorely that his wealth was spent, and to no good purpose. Nothing could comfort him in his distress. One night in a dream a venerable old man came towards him, and said, with a smiling face, "Know, Zeyn, there is no sorrow that is not followed by mirth,² no misfortune that does not bring at last some happiness. If you desire to see the end of your affliction,³ set out for Grand Cairo, where great prosperity awaits you."

The young sultan was much struck⁴ with his dream, and spoke of it very seriously to his mother, who only laughed and said: "My son, would you leave your kingdom and go into Egypt on⁵ the faith of a dream, which may be a deceit?⁶"

"Why⁷ not, madam?" answered Zeyn; "do you believe all dreams are false?⁸ No, no, some of them are sent from Heaven. My teachers have told me a thousand cases which will not let me doubt of it. The old man who appeared to me had something more⁹ than human about his person. If you will have me tell you what I think, I believe it was our great Prophet himself, who, pitying my sorrow, intends to relieve¹⁰ it. I am resolved to follow his advice."

The queen tried to dissuade him, but in vain. The sultan begged her to govern the kingdom in¹¹ his absence, and set out one night privately¹² from his palace, and all alone took¹³ the road to Cairo.

Repented sorely, 深自悔恨. ² Mirth, 歡樂. ³ Affliction, 困苦; 苦楚. ⁴ Struck, 爲...所動. ⁵ On the faith of a dream, 因信一夢之故. ⁶ Deceit, 無可徵實之事. ⁷ Why not, 何爲不然. ⁸ False, 假. ⁹ More than human, 超出人類(謂其神也). ¹⁰ Relieve, 解免. ¹¹ In his absence, 當其去國之時. ¹² Privately, 私; 秘密. ¹³ Took the road to, 往.

After much trouble and fatigue he arrived at that famous city. He alighted at the gate of a mosque, where, being¹ spent with weariness, he lay down. No sooner was he fallen asleep than he saw the same old man, who said to him: "I am pleased with you, my son; you have believed me. Now, know I have sent you on this long journey only to try you; I find you have courage and resolution.² You deserve that I should make you the richest and happiest prince in the world. Return to Bussorah, and you shall find immense wealth in your palace. No king ever possessed so rich a treasure."

Prince Zeyn was not pleased with this dream. "Alas!" thought he to himself when he awoke, "how much was I mistaken! That old man, whom I took for our Prophet exists³ only in my disturbed⁴ brain. My fancy was so full of him that it is no wonder I have seen him again. I had best return to Bussorah; what should I do here any longer? It is fortunate that only my mother knows why I came hither; my people, if they knew, would make⁵ a jest of me."

He set out at once for his kingdom, and when he arrived the queen asked him whether he returned well pleased. He told her all that had happened, and the queen, seeing his disappointment,⁶ gave him comfort instead of reproof.⁷

"Do not afflict yourself, my son," said she; "if God has appointed⁸ you riches, you will have them without any trouble. Be contented; be virtuous;⁹ seek to give your subject¹⁰ happiness; thus you will win your own."

¹ Being spent with weariness, 疲極. spent, 力盡. weariness, 疲勞. ² Resolution, 決心. ³ Exists, 有. ⁴ Disturbed brain, 昏亂之腦筋. ⁵ Make a jest of me, 以我爲笑柄. ⁶ Disappointment, 失望; 失意. ⁷ Reproof, 告; 責. ⁸ Appointed, 命; 錫. ⁹ Virtuous, 賢; 有善行 (be virtuous = 爲善). ¹⁰ Subject, 人民.

II

Sultan Zeyn vowed that for the future he would follow his mother's advice, and be directed by the wise viziers¹ she had chosen to help him in the government. But the very night after he returned to his palace, the old man came to him for the third time in a dream, and said:

"The time of your prosperity is come, brave Zeyn; to-morrow morning, as soon as you are up, take a little pickax,² and dig in the former sultan's-closet;³ you will find there a rich treasure."

As soon as the sultan awoke, he got up, ran to the queen, and eagerly told her of the new dream.

"Really, my son," said the queen, smiling, "this is a very capricious⁴ old man; but have you a mind to believe him again? At any rate, this new task is not so bad as your long journeys."

"Well, madam," answered the sultan, "I must own that this third dream has restored⁵ my confidence. This night he has exactly pointed out to me the place where these treasures are. I would rather search in vain than blame myself as long as I live for having missed, perhaps, great riches by doubting at the wrong time."

Then he left the queen, caused a pickax to be brought to him, and went alone into his father's closet. He began at once to break⁶ up the ground, and took up more than half the square stones with which it was paved,⁷ but yet saw no sign of what he sought. Resting for a moment, he thought⁸

¹ Viziers, 國老; 大臣. ² Pickax, 鋤名 (此器有兩端, 設柄於中, 其一端尖如鴉嘴, 以鋤則入深, 一端則橫平而寬, 有鋒, 如橫置一斧然, 以鋤則及廣). ³ Closet, 退休小室. ⁴ Capricious, 變易無常. ⁵ Restored my confidence, 恢復我之信心. ⁶ Break up, 開掘. ⁷ Paved, 鋪; 砌. ⁸ Thought within himself, 心中暗想.

within himself, "I am much afraid my mother had cause enough to laugh at me." But he took¹ heart, and went on with his labor. On a sudden he discovered a white slab,² which he lifted up, and under it he found a staircase³ of white marble. He lighted a lamp at once, and went down the stairs⁴ into a room, the floor of which was laid with tiles⁵ of chinaware, and the roof and the walls were of crystal. The room contained four golden tables, on each of which were ten urns⁶ of beautiful stone. He went up to one of these urns, took off the cover, and, with⁷ no less joy than surprise, found it full of pieces of gold. He looked into all the forty, one after another, and found them full of the same coin, and, taking out a handful, he carried it to the queen.

His mother was amazed at what he told her. "O my son!" said she, "take heed you do not lavish⁸ away all this wealth foolishly, as you have already wasted the royal⁹ treasure. Give¹⁰ not your enemies so much cause to rejoice."

"No, madam," answered Zeyn, "henceforth I will live in such a manner as shall be pleasing to you."

The queen desired to be shown the wonderful room, which her husband had made with such secrecy that she had never heard of it. Zeyn led her to the closet, down the marble stairs, and into the chamber where the urns were. She looked curiously at everything, and in a corner spied¹¹ a

¹ Took heart, 振作精神。 ² Slab, 石板; 石片。 ³ Staircase, 梯或階全部之稱也。 ⁴ Stairs, 梯或階之層級也。 ⁵ Tiles of chinaware, 磁磚。 ⁶ Urns, 甕; 缸。 ⁷ With no less joy than surprise, 驚喜參半; 驚喜交集; 始驚繼喜。 ⁸ Lavish, 耗費。 ⁹ Royal treasure, 國庫。 ¹⁰ Give not your enemies so much cause to rejoice, 毋界汝敵以笑樂之資。 ¹¹ Spied, 窺見。

little urn of the same sort of stone as the others. The prince had not noticed it before, but opening it found within a golden key.

"My son," said the queen, "this key certainly belongs to some other treasure; let us search well; perhaps we may discover its purpose."

They examined the chamber with the greatest care, and at length found a keyhole¹ in one of the panels² of the wall. Here the key readily opened a door which led into a chamber, in the midst of which were nine pedestals³ of massy gold. On eight of them stood as many statues, each of them made of a single diamond, and from them darted⁴ such a brightness⁵ that the whole room was perfectly light.

"Oh, Heavens!" cried Zeyn, "where could my father find such rarities?" The ninth pedestal surprised him most of all, for it was covered with a piece of white satin,⁶ on which were written these words:

"Dear son, it cost me much toil to procure⁷ these eight statues; but though they are wonderfully beautiful, you must know that there is a ninth in the world, which surpasses them all; that alone is worth more than a thousand such as these. If you desire to be master of it, go to the city of Cairo in Egypt. One of my old slaves, whose name is Mobarec,⁸ lives there; you will easily find him. Visit him, and tell him all that has befallen you. He will conduct you to the place where that wonderful statue is, and you will obtain it in safety."

¹ Keyhole, 鑰匙眼. ² Panels, 夾板. ³ Pedestals, 座 (所以置物其上者). ⁴ Darted, 發; 射. ⁵ Brightness, 光亮. ⁶ Satin, 緞子. ⁷ Procure, 獲得. ⁸ Mobarec (mō-bā/rék), 人名.

Having read these words, the young sultan said to the queen: "I will set out for Grand Cairo; nor do I believe, madam, that you will oppose¹ my going."

"No, my son," answered the queen; "you are certainly under the special² care of our great Prophet. He will not suffer³ you to perish."

III

The prince took with him only a small number of slaves, and, arriving safe at Cairo, inquired⁴ for Mobarec. He found him to be one of the wealthiest men of the city, living like a great lord, in a house always open⁵ to strangers. Zeyn was shown to it, and knocked at the gate, which was opened by a slave, who demanded: "What do you want, and who are you?"

"I am a stranger," answered the prince, "and, having heard much of the Lord Mobarec's generosity,⁶ am come to lodge with him."

The slave went to tell his master of the stranger's presence, and soon returned to bid⁷ the prince welcome. Zeyn went in, crossed⁸ a large court, and entered a hall richly furnished, where Mobarec received him with great courtesy,⁹ returning thanks for the honor Zeyn did him in lodging at his house. The prince, having answered¹⁰ his compliment, said: "I am the son of the late¹¹ Sultan of Bussorah, and my name is Zeyn Alasnam."

¹ Oppose, 反對. ² Special, 特別. ³ Suffer = allow, 任; 聽. ⁴ Inquired for, 探問; 打聽. ⁵ Open to strangers, 歡迎遠客. ⁶ Generosity, 慷慨; 大度. ⁷ Bid . . . welcome, 致歡迎之意; 請 . . . 入見. ⁸ Crossed, 經過. ⁹ Courtesy, 禮貌. ¹⁰ Answered his compliment, 答其稱頌之詞. ¹¹ Late Sultan, 前蘇丹; 前王. late, 已故; 棄世; 先.

"The Sultan," said Mobarec, "was formerly my master: but, my Lord, I never knew of any children, that he had; what is your age?"

"I am twenty years old," answered the sultan; "how long is it since you left my father's court?"

"Almost two-and-twenty¹ years," replied Mobarec; "but how can you convince me that you are his son?"

"My father," replied Zeyn, "had beneath his closet an underground room, where I have found forty urns full of gold."

"And what more is there?" said Mobarec.

"There are," answered the prince, "nine pedestals of massive gold; on eight of them are as many diamond statues, and on the ninth a piece of white satin, on which my father has written what I must do to procure another statue, more valuable than all the rest together. You know where that statue is; for it is written on the satin that you will conduct me to it."

When he had spoken these words, Mobarec fell down at his feet, and kissing one of his hands, said:

"I bless² God for having brought you hither. I now know you to be the Sultan of Bussorah's son. If you will go to the place where the wonderful statue is, I will show the way; but you must first rest here a few days. This day I entertain³ the great men of the city. Will you come and be merry⁴ with us?"

"I shall be very glad," replied Zeyn, "to be admitted to your feast."

"Mobarec led him at once under a dome⁵ where the company were gathered, seated him at a table, and served⁶

¹ Two-and-twenty = twenty-two. ² Bless, 贊美. ³ Entertain, 款待. ⁴ Merry, 快樂. ⁵ Dome, 屋之圓頂. ⁶ Served him on the knee, 跪而進食.

him on the knee. The merchants of Cairo whispered¹ to one another: "Who is this stranger, to whom Mobarec pays so much respect?"

When they had dined² Mobarec addressed³ the company: "Know, my friends, that this young stranger is the son of the Sultan of Bussorah, my master. His father purchased me, and died without making me free, so that I am still a slave, and all I have belongs of⁴ right to this young prince, his sole⁵ heir."

Here Zeyn broke⁶ in: "Mobarec, I declare before all these guests, that I make you free from this moment, and that I renounce⁷ all right⁸ to you and all you possess. Consider what you would have me do more for you." Mobarec kissed⁹ the ground, and gave the prince most hearty thanks.

The next day Zeyn said to Mobarec: "I have taken rest enough. I came not to Cairo to take my pleasure. It is time for us to set out in search of the ninth statue."

"Sire," said Mobarec, "I am ready, but you know not what dangers you must face."¹⁰

"Whatever the danger may be," answered the prince, "I am ready; I will either perish or succeed. All that happens in this world is by God's direction.¹¹ Do¹² you but bear¹³ me company, and let your courage be equal to mine."

Mobarec, finding that Zeyn's mind was made up, called his servants and bade them make ready for the start.

¹ Whispered, 耳語. ² Dined, 食. ³ Addressed the company, 告衆賓曰. ⁴ Of right, 照律; 當然. ⁵ Sole heir, 唯一之嗣子. ⁶ Broke in, 接語. ⁷ Renounce, 拋棄. ⁸ Right to you and all you possess, 管轄汝及汝之所有之權. right to, 管轄...之權. ⁹ Kissed the ground, 以吻接地. ¹⁰ Face, 遇; 抵禦. ¹¹ Direction, 指揮. ¹² Do (語動詞, 用以加重下文云爾字 bear 之語勢者也). ¹³ Bear me company, 伴我同行.

When the prince and he had made their own preparations, they set out. After traveling many days they came to a delightful spot, and alighted from their horses. Mobarec then said to the servants: "Do you remain here till we return." Then he said to Zeyn: "Now, sire, let us advance by ourselves. We are near the dreadful place where the ninth statue is kept. You will stand in need of all your courage."

They soon came to a vast lake. Mobarec sat down on the brink of it, saying to the prince: "We must cross this sea."

"How can we," answered Zeyn, "when we have no boat?"

"In a moment," replied Mobarec, "the enchanted boat of the Sultan of the Genii will come for us. But you must not speak to the boatman,¹ though his figure seem strange to you. Whatever you see, say nothing, for I tell you now, that if you utter one word when we are embarked the boat will sink."²

"I shall take care to be silent," said the prince; "you need only tell me what I am to do, and I will obey."

Whilst they were talking, he spied on the lake a boat made of red sandalwood. It had a mast of fine amber, and a blue satin flag.³ There was only one boatman in it, and he had the head of an elephant and the body of a tiger.⁴ When the boat was come to them, the monstrous boatman took them up one after the other with his trunk,⁵ put them into his boat, and carried them over the lake in a moment. He then took them up with his trunk again, set them ashore, and instantly vanished with his boat.

¹ Boatman, 舟子. ² Sink, 沉. ³ Flag, 旗. ⁴ Tiger, 虎. ⁵ Trunk, 象鼻.

"Now we may talk," said Mobarec; "the island we are in belongs to the King of the Genii. Look round you, prince; behold the beautiful fields and trees; hear the songs of thousand birds unknown in other countries."

Zeyn could not enough admire the beauties around him, and still found something new, as he advanced farther into the island. At length they came before a palace built of emeralds, surrounded by a wide moat,¹ on the banks of which grew such tall trees that they shaded² the whole palace. The gate was of massive gold, and was³ approached by a bridge formed of one single shell of a fish, at least six fathoms long and three in breadth. At the head of the bridge stood a company of very tall genii, who guarded the entrance into the castle with great clubs⁴ of steel.

"Let us go no farther at present," said Mobarec; "these genii will destroy us unless we perform a magical rite."⁵ Then Mobarec laid on the ground two large mats, on the edges whereof⁶ he scattered some precious stones, musk,⁷ and amber. Afterwards he sat down on one of the mats, and Zeyn on the other, and Mobarec said to the prince:

"I shall now, sire, conjure⁸ the Sultan of the Genii, who lives in this palace. If our coming into this island pleases him not, he will appear in the shape of a dreadful monster; if it pleases him, he will show himself in the shape of a handsome man. You must rise at once and salute him without going off your mat; for you would certainly perish should you stir⁹ from it. You must say to him, 'Lord of the

¹ Moat, 城壕. ² Shaded, 蔭蔽. ³ Was approached by a bridge, 有一橋通之. ⁴ Clubs of steel, 鐵棍. steel, 鋼. ⁵ Rite, 禮式. ⁶ Whereof=of which. ⁷ Musk, 麝香. ⁸ Conjure, 召; 招...來. ⁹ Stir, 動 (stir from, 離也).

Genii, I wish Your Majesty may protect¹ me, as you always protected my father; and I most humbly beg of you to give me the ninth statue! ”

Then Mobarec began his magic rite. Instantly their eyes were dazzled by a long flash of lightning, followed by a clap of thunder. The whole island was covered with a thick darkness, a furious² storm³ of wind blew, a dreadful cry was heard, the island felt a shock,⁴ as of an earthquake,⁵ and the Sultan of the Genii appeared in the shape of a very handsome man, yet there was something terrific⁶ in his air.

When King Zeyn had spoken the words taught him by Mobarec, the Sultan of the Genii, smiling, answered:

“My son, I loved your father, and each time he came to pay me his respects I gave him one of his statues. I have no less kindness for you. Some days before your father died, I made him write the words you read on the white satin. I promised to protect you, and to give you the ninth statue, most beautiful of all. It was I whom you saw in a dream in the shape of an old man; I caused you to open the underground place where you found the urns and the statues. I know what brought you hither, and on certain conditions you shall obtain what you desire. You must return with Mobarec, and you must swear to come again to me, and to bring with you a young maiden⁷ who has reached her fifteenth year, and has never wished to be married. She must be perfectly beautiful, and you⁸ so much master of yourself as not even to wish to marry her as you are bringing her hither. I will give you a

¹ Protect, 保護. ² Furious, 暴烈. ³ Storm of wind, 大風; 風暴.
⁴ Shock, 震動. ⁵ Earthquake, 地震. ⁶ Terrific, 可怕. ⁷ Maiden, 處女; 室女. ⁸ You so much master of yourself = you must be so much master of yourself, 足以自制.

looking-glass,¹ which will clearly reflect² no other image³ than that of the young maiden you seek. Now swear that you will observe these terms,⁴ and keep your oath; otherwise I will take away your life, in spite of the kindness I feel towards you."

Zeyn Alasnam swore that he would faithfully keep his word, and the Sultan of the Genii handed⁵ him a looking-glass, saying: "My son, you may return when you please; there is the glass⁶ you are to use."

Zeyn and Mōbarec then took leave of the Sultan of the Genii, and went towards the lake, over which the boatman with the elephant's head ferried⁷ them as he had done before. They joined their servants, and returned with them to Cairo.

IV

When they had rested a few days, Mōbarec told Zeyn that he knew a very shrewd old woman who would help them. Thus a number of beautiful maidens of fifteen years of age were brought before King Zeyn; but when he had viewed them and tested them with the glass, it always became clouded.⁸ After finding that there were no maidens in Cairo who did not wish to be married, Zeyn and Mōbarec went to Bagdad, where they hired a great palace, and soon made acquaintance with the chief people of the city.

At this time there lived at Bagdad an imam named Boubekir⁹ Muezin, famous for his charity.¹⁰ To him

- ¹ Looking-glass, 鏡. ² Reflect, 反射 (現). ³ Image, 像. ⁴ Terms, 條款; 條件. ⁵ Handed, 交給. ⁶ Glass (指 looking-glass). ⁷ Ferried, 渡. ⁸ Clouded, 如有雲霧遮蔽; 不明. ⁹ Boubekir Muezin (bou-bū-kār/ mū-zi/n), 人名. ¹⁰ Charity, 慈善.

Mobarec went and offered a purse of five hundred gold pieces, in the name of Prince Zeyn, to be given to the poor. The next day Boubekir Muezin waited¹ on Prince Zeyn to return to him his thanks, and, on hearing the purpose of his visit to Bagdad, told him of a young maiden, the daughter of a former vizier of the Sultan of Bagdad, of whom he felt sure that she would fulfill the required² terms. He offered to ask her from her father as the wife of the prince, if he would go with him to her father's mansion. As soon as the vizier learned the prince's birth and purpose, he called his daughter, and made her take off her veil. Never had the young Sultan of Bussorah beheld such a perfect and striking³ beauty. He stood amazed and taking out his glass at once, found that it remained bright and clear.

When he knew that he had at last found such a person as he sought, he begged the vizier to grant her to him. The cauzee⁴ was sent for at once, the contract⁵ signed,⁶ and the marriage⁷ prayer said.⁷ Then Zeyn conducted the vizier to his house, where he gave him a feast and valuable presents. The next day he sent a vast quantity of jewels by Mobarec, who led the bride home, where the wedding was kept with all the pomp that became⁸ Zeyn's rank and dignity. When all the company was dismissed,¹⁰ Mobarec said to his master:

"Let us begone,¹¹ sire; let us not stay any longer at Bagdad, but return to Cairo. Remember the promise you made to the Sultan of the Genii."

¹ Waited on, 謁見. ² Required terms, 要求之條款. ³ Striking, 驚人. ⁴ Cauzee = Cazi, Cauzi, 回教次高級之僧. ⁵ Contract, 契約; 婚書. ⁶ Signed, 署名; 蓋押; 訂定 (此字前省去 was 一字). ⁷ Marriage prayer, 結婚時祈禱之語. ⁸ Said (此字前省去 was 一字). ⁹ Became, 稱; 合. ¹⁰ Dismissed, 散. ¹¹ Begone = go away.

“Let us go,” answered the prince. “I must take care to keep my word; yet I must confess, my dear Mobarec, the damsel is so charming² that I am tempted³ to carry her to Buseorah, and place her on the throne.”

“Alas! sire,” answered Mobarec, “take heed how you give way to that thought. Whatever⁴ it costs you, be⁵ as good as your word to the Sultan of the Genii.”

“Well, then, Mobarec,” said the prince, “do you take care to conceal⁶ the lovely maid from me; let her never appear in my sight—perhaps I have already seen too much of her.”

When Mobarec had made all things ready for their journey, they returned to Cairo, and thence set out for the island of the Sultan of the Genii. When they were arrived, the maid, who had journeyed⁷ all the way in a litter,⁸ unseen by the Prince ever since the marriage, said to Mobarec:

“Where are we? Shall we soon be in the country of the prince, my husband?”

“Madam,” answered Mobarec, “it is time to tell you the truth. Prince Zeyn married you only in order to get you from your father. He did not promise to make you Queen of Bussorah, but to bring you to the Sultan of the Genii, who has asked of him a maiden of your loveliness⁹ and purity.¹⁰”

At these words, she began to weep bitterly, which moved the prince and Mobarec. “Take pity on me,” said she. “I am a stranger; you¹¹ will have to answer to God for your treachery towards me.”

¹ Damsel, 處女. ² Charming, 可愛. ³ Tempted, 有 . . . 之意. ⁴ Whatever it costs you, 無論其損失如何. ⁵ Be as good as your word, 踐汝之言. ⁶ Conceal, 藏匿. ⁷ Journeyed, 旅行. ⁸ Litter, 昇床. ⁹ Loveliness, 可愛(即“美麗”之意). ¹⁰ Purity, 貞潔. ¹¹ You will have to answer to God for your treachery towards me, 爾將因爾之詐我, 而受上帝之責罰; 爾今欺我, 天必懲之.

Her tears had no effect, for she was presented to the Sultan of the Genii, who after looking at her closely, said to Zeyn:

“Prince, I am satisfied with your conduct. The maid¹ you have brought me is beautiful and good, and I am pleased that you have been master of yourself to fulfill your promise to me. Return to your own land; and when you enter the room where the eight statues are, you shall find the ninth which I promised you.”

Zeyn thanked the King of the Genii, and returned with Mobarec to Cairo, and thence with haste homewards² to see the ninth statue. But he could not help thinking often with regret of the maiden he had married, and blamed himself for her sorrows.

“Alas!” said he to himself, “I have taken her from a tender³ father, to sacrifice⁴ her to a genie. O matchless⁵ beauty! you deserve a better fate.”

V

Troubled⁶ with these thoughts, Sultan Zeyn at last reached Bussorah, to⁷ the great joy of his subjects. He went at once to⁸ give an account of his journey to his mother, who was in a rapture⁹ to hear that he had obtained the ninth statue.

“Let us go, my son,” said she; “let us go and see it, for it is certainly in the underground chambers, since the Sultan of the Genii said you should find it there.”

¹ Maid, 少女. ² Homewards = towards home. ³ Tender, 慈愛.
⁴ Sacrifice her to a genie, 獻諸一魔. sacrifice, 以爲犧牲. ⁵ Matchless, 無匹; 無雙. ⁶ Troubled with these thoughts, 爲此種思想所擾.
⁷ To the great joy of his subjects, 人民歡躍. ⁸ To give an account of, 報告. ⁹ Rapture, 大喜; 狂喜.

The young sultan and his mother, both impatient¹ to see the wonderful statue, went down into the room; but how great was their surprise, when, instead of a statue of diamonds, they beheld in the ninth statue a most beautiful maiden, whom the prince knew² to be the one he had conducted³ into the island of the Genii!

"Prince," said the young maid, "you are surprised to see me here. You expected to find something more precious, and I doubt not that you now repent having taken so much trouble. You expected a better reward."

"Madam," answered Zeyn, "Heaven⁴ is my witness that more than once I nearly broke my word with the Sultan of the Genii to⁵ keep you to myself. Whatever be the value of a diamond statue, is it worth as much as your⁶ being mine? I love you above all the diamonds and wealth in the world."

Just as he finished speaking, a clap of thunder was heard, and the place shook. Zeyn's mother was alarmed, but the Sultan of the Genii appeared at once, and drove⁷ away her fear.

"Madam," said he to her, "I protect and love your son. I had a mind to try whether, at his age, he was master of himself. This is the ninth statue I designed⁸ for him. It is more rare and precious than the others. Sir," said he, turning to the young prince, "live happy,⁹ Zeyn, with this your¹⁰ wife; and if you would have her true¹¹ and constant¹² to you, love her always, and love her only."

¹ Impatient, 急於. ² Knew, 認識. ³ Conducted, 引. ⁴ Heaven is my witness, 天可爲證. witness, 證人. ⁵ To keep you to myself, 留汝不遺. ⁶ Your being mine, 汝之屬我. ⁷ Drove away her fear, 祛除其恐怖之心. ⁸ Designed for him, 所欲與彼者. ⁹ Happy = happily. ¹⁰ Your wife (in apposition with "this"). ¹¹ True, 處貞. ¹² Constant, 歷久不渝.

With these words the Sultan of the Genii vanished, and Zeyn, enchanted¹ with the young lady, caused her that very day to be proclaimed Queen of Bussorah, over which they reigned together in happiness for many years.

¹ Enchanted with the young lady. 覆此麗姝而狂喜。

